Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Installation and User’s Guide
Note
Before using this information and the product it supports, read the general information under “Notices” on page 155.

Third Edition (March 2006)
This edition applies to Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0 of IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server (program numbers 5608-APE, 5608-CSS) and to any subsequent releases until otherwise indicated in new editions or technical newsletters. Make sure you are using the correct edition for the level of the product.

Changes since the September 2003 edition are marked with a vertical bar (|) in the left margin. Make sure that you are using the correct edition for the level of the product.

Order publications through your sales representative or branch office serving your locality.

Your feedback is important in helping to provide the most accurate and high-quality information. If you have comments about this book or any other IBM Tivoli Storage Manager documentation, please see “Contacting IBM Software Support” on page 135.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.
US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.
Contents

Summary of changes ........................................ v
March 2006, Version 5 Release 3 .......................... v

About this guide ........................................ vii
Who should read this guide ............................... vii
Publications ................................................ vii
IBM Tivoli Storage Manager library ..................... ix
Related publications ..................................... x
Accessing terminology online .......................... x
Accessing publications online .......................... xi
Ordering publications ................................. xi
Tivoli Technical Training .............................. xi
Support information .................................... xi
IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Web site .................. xi
IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail Web site ...... xii
IBM TotalStorage Web site ........................... xii
Conventions used in this book ......................... xii
Typeface conventions .................................... xii
Reading syntax diagrams ................................ xiii

Chapter 1. Data Protection for Exchange
Overview .................................................... 1
| New features ........................................ 1
| Additional features ................................ 2
| Backup Processing: Overview ...................... 3
| VSS Backup processing: Overview .............. 3
| Backup types ....................................... 5
| Backup methods ................................... 6
| Restore Processing: Overview ................. 8
| Restore methods ................................ 9
| Backup strategies ................................ 11
| Full backups only ............................... 11
| Full backup plus incremental backups .......... 11
| Full backup plus differentials ............... 11
| Using VSS and Legacy Backups together .... 12
| How Tivoli Storage Manager server policy affects 13
| Data Protection for Exchange .................. 15
| Security ........................................... 15
| Performance ..................................... 15
| Buffering (Legacy only) ......................... 15
| LAN Free ....................................... 15
| Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) Support .... 16
| Documentation ................................... 16
| Globalization .................................... 16

Chapter 2. Installing Data Protection for Exchange
Environment requirements ............................. 19
| Hardware ....................................... 19
| Software and operating system ................ 20
| Installation procedure ........................... 21
| Language Packs ................................ 22

Chapter 3. Configuring Data Protection for Exchange ........................................ 25
Part I: Configuration overview ...................... 26
| Back up to Tivoli Storage Manager storage versus 26
| back up to local shadow volumes .................. 26
| Recommended Tivoli Storage Manager policy 27
| settings ........................................... 27
| Data Protection for Exchange node name: .... 29
| Recommended settings ............................. 29
| Proxy node definitions (VSS Backups) .......... 30
| Specifying Data Protection for Exchange options 31
| Specifying Data Protection for Exchange preferences ........................................ 36
Part II: Configuration procedure .................... 37
| 1. On the Tivoli Storage Manager server: .... 37
| 2. On the machine running the Exchange Server: 38
| 3. On the machine running the Off-loaded backups (VSS only): .......... 40
Part III: Verify your configuration .................. 41

Chapter 4. Using the Graphical User Interface (GUI) ........................................ 43
| GUI overview ................................... 43
| Menu bar ....................................... 43
| Toolbar ........................................ 48
| GUI Invocation .................................. 48
| Backup and Restore Window .................... 49
| GUI Tasks ...................................... 50
| How to perform a Legacy Backup ............. 50
| How to perform a VSS Backup ................ 50
| How to perform a VSS Off-loaded Backup .... 51
| Restoring Exchange storage groups .......... 52
| Restoring the Site Replication Service (SRS) 53
| Restoring the Key Management Service (KMS) 53
| Restore options ................................ 53
| Data Protection for Exchange in a MSCS environment ........................................ 54

Chapter 5. Using the Command Line Interface ........................................... 55
| Overview ...................................... 56
| Query Commands ................................ 57
| QUERY EXCHANGE .......................... 57
| QUERY TDP .............................. 61
| QUERY TSM ........................... 64
| Backup Command ................................ 69
| BACKUP .................................... 69
| Restore Commands ............................ 78
| RESTORE .................................. 78
| RESTOREFILES ........................... 90
| Preference Commands ......................... 97
| CHANGETSMPASSWORD .................. 97
| SET ......................................... 100
| TDP.EXCC HELP ........................... 104
Summary of changes

Changes for this publication are summarized below.

March 2006, Version 5 Release 3

Changes made to Data Protection for Exchange since the 5.2.1 release are described in “New features” on page 1.
About this guide

The subject of this publication is Data Protection for Exchange, a component of the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail product.

Data Protection for Exchange performs online backups of Microsoft® Exchange Server databases to Tivoli Storage Manager storage. This integration with the Microsoft Exchange Server application program interface (API) maximizes the protection of data, thus providing a comprehensive storage management solution.

Tivoli Storage Manager is a client-server licensed product that provides storage management services in a multi-platform computer environment.

Throughout this document, the term Windows® (unless otherwise specified) refers to the following operating systems:
  • Windows 2000 Server
  • Windows Server 2003

Throughout this document, the term Exchange Server (unless otherwise specified) refers to the following products:
  • Exchange 2000 Server
  • Exchange Server 2003

Who should read this guide

The target audience for this publication are system installers, system users, and system administrators.

In this book, it is assumed that you have an understanding of the following applications:
  • Microsoft Exchange Server
  • Tivoli Storage Manager server
  • Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client
  • Tivoli Storage Manager Application Program Interface
  • Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS) technology (knowledge of this application is only assumed if you plan to perform VSS operations)

It is also assumed that you have an understanding of one of the following operating systems:
  • Windows 2000 Server
  • Windows Server 2003

Publications

This section lists related IBM Tivoli Storage Manager publications. It also describes how to access Tivoli® publications online and how to order Tivoli publications.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager library

The following documents are available in the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager library:
  • IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Backup-Archive Client Installation and User’s Guide

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1998, 2006
Provides information for an end-user to install, configure, and use the Tivoli Storage Manager client on Windows operating systems.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for UNIX and Linux Backup-Archive Clients Installation and User’s Guide**
  Provides information for an end-user to install, configure, and use the Tivoli Storage Manager client on UNIX and Linux operating systems.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Administrator’s Guide**
  Provides concepts and procedures for configuring and customizing the Tivoli Storage Manager server on Windows operating systems.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Administrator’s Reference**
  Provides details about administrative commands, server options, and server utilities for Tivoli Storage Manager server on Windows operating systems.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for AIX Administrator’s Guide**
  Provides concepts and procedures for configuring and customizing the Tivoli Storage Manager server on AIX operating systems.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for AIX Administrator’s Reference**
  Provides details about administrative commands, server options, and server utilities for Tivoli Storage Manager server on AIX operating systems.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Sun Solaris Administrator’s Guide**
  Provides concepts and procedures for configuring and customizing the Tivoli Storage Manager server on Sun Solaris operating systems.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Sun Solaris Administrator’s Reference**
  Provides details about administrative commands, server options, and server utilities for Tivoli Storage Manager server on Sun Solaris operating systems.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Messages**
  Provides explanations and suggested actions for messages issued by the Tivoli Storage Manager server program for storage management services, the administrative client graphical user interface, administrative command line client, data protection clients, and backup-archive client.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager: Problem Determination Guide**
  This guide describes how to diagnose problems with Tivoli Storage Manager.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Using the Application Program Interface**
  Provides information to help you add Tivoli Storage Manager application program interface calls to an existing application and to write programs with general-use program interfaces that obtain the services of Tivoli Storage Manager.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for SAN for AIX Storage Agent User’s Guide**
  Provides an overview of LAN-free data transfer and detailed explanations about configuring and using the Tivoli Storage Manager client, storage agent, and server.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for SAN for HP-UX Storage Agent User’s Guide**
  Provides an overview of LAN-free data transfer and detailed explanations about configuring and using the Tivoli Storage Manager client, storage agent, and server.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for SAN for Linux Storage Agent User’s Guide**
  Provides an overview of LAN-free data transfer and detailed explanations about configuring and using the Tivoli Storage Manager client, storage agent, and server.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for SAN for Sun Solaris Storage Agent User’s Guide**
  Provides an overview of LAN-free data transfer and detailed explanations about configuring and using the Tivoli Storage Manager client, storage agent, and server.
Provides an overview of LAN-free data transfer and detailed explanations about configuring and using the Tivoli Storage Manager client, storage agent, and server.

- **IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for SAN for Windows Storage Agent User’s Guide**
  Provides an overview of LAN-free data transfer and detailed explanations about configuring and using the Tivoli Storage Manager client, storage agent, and server.

### Related publications

The following IBM publications provide additional information.

- **IBM TotalStorage DS6000 Introduction and Planning Guide**
  This publication provides an overview of the IBM TotalStorage DS6000, and provides the feature codes for ordering standard and optional features. It also provides planning guidelines for DS6000 installation and configuration.

- **IBM TotalStorage DS6000 Host Systems Attachment Guide**
  This guide provides information about:
  - Attaching the IBM DS6000 to an open-systems host with Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) adapters.
  - Attaching the DS6000 to an open-systems host with fibre-channel adapters.
  - Connecting IBM Enterprise Systems Connection ESCON cables to an IBM S/390 and IBM (zSeries) host systems.
  - Connecting IBM Enterprise Systems Fibre Connection (FICON) cables to an S/390 and zSeries host systems.

- **IBM TotalStorage DS6000 Command-Line Interface User’s Guide**
  This guide introduces the IBM TotalStorage DS command-line interfaces (CLI). It also provides command syntax and reference information for commands that can be used through the IBM TotalStorage DS6000 Command Line Interfaces.

- **IBM TotalStorage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide**
  This publication provides an overview of the IBM TotalStorage DS8000, and provides the feature codes for ordering standard and optional features. It also provides planning guidelines for DS8000 installation and configuration.

- **IBM TotalStorage DS8000 User’s Guide**
  This publication provides the procedures for using the IBM TotalStorage DS8000. It includes an overview of the DS8000 and guidelines for:
  - Operating the DS8000.
  - Operating the Hardware Management Console.
  - Using optional software for the DS8000.
  - Migrating data to the DS8000.
  - Analyzing problems.
  - Disaster Recovery.

- **IBM TotalStorage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide**
  This guide provides information about:
  - Attaching the IBM DS8000 to an open-systems host with Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) adapters.
  - Attaching the DS8000 to an open-systems host with fibre-channel adapters.
  - Connecting IBM Enterprise Systems Connection ESCON cables to an IBM S/390 and IBM (zSeries) host systems.
– Connecting IBM Enterprise Systems Fibre Connection (FICON) cables to an S/390 and zSeries host systems.

- IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller Configuration Guide
  Provides information about how to configure the SAN Volume Controller.

- IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller Configuration Guide Supplement (VSS)
  Provides information about how to install and use Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy service with the SAN Volume Controller.

- IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller Planning Guide
  This publication introduces the IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller, its components and its features. It also provides planning guidelines for installing and configuring the SAN Volume Controller.

- CIM Agent and Console for IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller
  Provides license information for IBM TotalStorage Common Information Model Agent.

- IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller CIM Agent Developer’s Reference
  This Guide helps developers retrieve and abstract CIM Agent object classes and properties. This will help developers to use object classes and models to create copy services and LUN masking.

- Installation and Setup Instructions for the IBM TotalStorage N3700 and EXP600 Expansion Unit
  This manual provides basic information required to install and set up an IBM TotalStorage N3700 and disk expansion unit EXP600. It also provides information required to connect an N3700 to a network, additional shelves, a power source, third party devices, and/or to an ASCII terminal.

- IBM TotalStorage N3700 Hardware and Service Guide
  This manual provides basic information required to install and set up an IBM TotalStorage N3700, models A10 and A20. It also provides information required to connect an N3700 to a network, additional shelves, a power source, third party devices, and/or to an ASCII terminal. This manual also provides information required to configure, monitor, troubleshoot and replace the N3700. Finally, it provides regulatory information.

**Accessing terminology online**

The Tivoli Software Glossary includes definitions for many of the technical terms related to Tivoli software. The Tivoli Software Glossary is available at the following Tivoli software library Web site:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/tividd/glossary/tivoliglossarymst.htm

The IBM Terminology Web site consolidates the terminology from IBM product libraries in one convenient location. You can access the Terminology Web site at the following Web address:

http://www.ibm.com/ibm/terminology

**Accessing publications online**

The product CD contains the publications that are in the product library. The format of the publications is PDF, HTML, or both. To access the publications using a Web browser, open the infocenter.html file. The file is in the appropriate publications directory on the product CD.
IBM® posts publications for this and all other Tivoli products, as they become available and whenever they are updated, to the Tivoli software information center Web site. Access the Tivoli software information center by first going to the Tivoli software library at the following Web address:


Scroll down and click the Product manuals link. In the Tivoli Technical Product Documents Alphabetical Listing window, click the <Tivoli Storage Manager> link to access the product library at the Tivoli software information center.

Note: If you print PDF documents on other than letter-sized paper, set the option in the File → Print window that allows Adobe Reader to print letter-sized pages on your local paper.

Ordering publications
You can order many Tivoli publications online at the following Web site:


You can also order by telephone by calling one of these numbers:
• In the United States: 800-879-2755
• In Canada: 800-426-4968

In other countries, contact your software account representative to order Tivoli publications.

Tivoli Technical Training
For Tivoli technical training information, refer to the following IBM Tivoli Education Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/software/tivoli/education

Support information
If you have a problem with your IBM software, you want to resolve it quickly. IBM provides the following ways for you to obtain the support you need:
• Searching knowledge bases: You can search across a large collection of known problems and workarounds, Technotes, and other information.
• Obtaining fixes: You can locate the latest fixes that are already available for your product.
• Contacting IBM Software Support: If you still cannot solve your problem, and you need to work with someone from IBM, you can use a variety of ways to contact IBM Software Support.

For more information about these three ways of resolving problems, see Appendix D, “Support information,” on page 131.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager Web site
Technical support information and publications are available at the following address:
By accessing the Tivoli Storage Manager home page, you can access subjects that interest you. You can also keep up-to-date with the newest Tivoli Storage Manager product information.

**IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail Web site**

The IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail Web site contains a knowledge base of articles and information related to backup and restore issues. Access this information at: http://www.ibm.com/software/sysmgmt/products/support/IBM_Tivoli_Storage_Manager_for_Mail.html

**IBM TotalStorage Web site**

Technical support information and publications are available at the following address: http://www-03.ibm.com/servers/storage

By accessing the IBM TotalStorage home page, you can access detailed information regarding product compatibility requirements. You can also keep up-to-date with the newest IBM TotalStorage product information.

---

**Conventions used in this book**

This guide uses several conventions for special terms and actions, operating system-dependent commands and paths.

**Typeface conventions**

This guide uses the following typeface conventions:

- **Bold**
  - Commands, keywords, authorization roles, or other information that you must use.
  - Example: Log on to the server as root user.

- **italics**
  - Values or variables that you must provide.
  - Emphasized words and phrases.
  - Example: The node name of the production node and backup node must not be the same.

- **bold italics**
  - Options and parameters.
  - Example: Specify the value for the compression option.

- **monospace**
  - Directories, parameters, URLs, and output examples.
  - Example: The product is installed in the C:\program files\tivoli\tsm\client\ba directory.

- **UPPER CASE**
  - Environment variables associated with Tivoli Storage Manager, operating systems, or Exchange Server.
  - Example: Make sure the DSM_DIR environment variable is set correctly.
Reading syntax diagrams

This section describes how to read the syntax diagrams used in this book. To read a syntax diagram, follow the path of the line. Read from left to right, and top to bottom.

- The ➤ symbol indicates the beginning of a syntax diagram.
- The ➣ symbol at the end of a line indicates the syntax diagram continues on the next line.
- The ➤ symbol at the beginning of a line indicates a syntax diagram continues from the previous line.
- The ➣ symbol indicates the end of a syntax diagram.

Syntax items, such as a keyword or variable, can be:
- On the line (required element)
- Above the line (default element)
- Below the line (optional element).

**Syntax Diagram Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviations:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uppercase letters denote the shortest acceptable truncation. If an item appears entirely in uppercase letters, it cannot be truncated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can type the item in any combination of uppercase or lowercase letters.

In this example, you can enter KEYWO, KEYWORD, or KEYWOd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbols:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enter these symbols exactly as they appear in the syntax diagram.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variables:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Italicized lowercase items (var_name) denote variables.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this example, you can specify a var_name when you enter the KEYWORD command.
### Syntax Diagram Description

#### Repetition:

An arrow returning to the left means you can repeat the item.

A character or space within the arrow means you must separate repeated items with that character or space.

A footnote by the arrow references the number of times you can repeat the item.

#### Example:

An arrow returning to the left means you can repeat the item.

A character or space within the arrow means you must separate repeated items with that character or space.

A footnote by the arrow references the number of times you can repeat the item.

#### Notes:

1. Specify *repeat* as many as 5 times.

### Required Choices:

When two or more items are in a stack and one of them is on the line, you *must* specify one item.

In this example, you *must* choose A, B, or C.

### Optional Choice:

When an item is below the line, that item is optional. In the first example, you can choose A or nothing at all.

When two or more items are in a stack below the line, all of them are optional. In the second example, you can choose A, B, C, or nothing at all.

### Defaults:

Defaults are above the line. The default is selected unless you override it. You can override the default by including an option from the stack below the line.

In this example, A is the default. You can override A by choosing B or C. You can also specify the default explicitly.

### Repeatable Choices:

A stack of items followed by an arrow returning to the left means you can select more than one item or, in some cases, repeat a single item.

In this example, you can choose any combination of A, B, or C.
### Syntax Diagram Description

**Syntax Fragments:**

Some diagrams, because of their length, must fragment the syntax. The fragment name appears between vertical bars in the diagram. The expanded fragment appears between vertical bars in the diagram after a heading with the same fragment name.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The fragment name</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The fragment name:

```
A
B
C
```
Chapter 1. Data Protection for Exchange Overview

This section provides introductory information about Data Protection for Exchange.

New features

The following features\(^1\) are new for Data Protection for Exchange:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Referred to as:</th>
<th>For more information see:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perform a VSS Backup to the Tivoli Storage Manager server using an alternate machine instead of a production machine.</td>
<td>Off-loaded Backup</td>
<td>“Off-loaded Backup” on page 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore VSS Backups that reside on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage to their original location.</td>
<td>VSS Restore</td>
<td>“VSS Restore” on page 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore VSS Backups that reside on local shadow volumes(^2) using file-level copy mechanisms.</td>
<td>VSS Fast Restore</td>
<td>“VSS Fast Restore” on page 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore VSS Backups that reside on local shadow volumes using hardware-assisted volume-level copy mechanisms.</td>
<td>VSS Instant Restore</td>
<td>“VSS Instant Restore” on page 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore a VSS Backup to an alternate machine.</td>
<td>Alternate server restore</td>
<td>Appendix C, “Advanced restore procedures,” on page 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tivoli Storage Manager policy-based management of VSS snapshot backups.</td>
<td>Server policy</td>
<td>“How Tivoli Storage Manager server policy affects Data Protection for Exchange” on page 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore the .edb, .stm, and .log files from a legacy backup that resides on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage to an alternate path for use with third-party products (such as Individual Mailbox Restore utilities).</td>
<td><code>restorefiles</code> command</td>
<td>“RESTOREFILES” on page 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A single graphical user interface for performing legacy and VSS backup, restore, and query operations.</td>
<td>GUI</td>
<td>Chapter 4, “Using the Graphical User Interface (GUI),” on page 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A single command line interface for performing legacy and VSS backup, restore, and query operations.</td>
<td>CLI</td>
<td>Chapter 5, “Using the Command Line Interface,” on page 55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Note that in order to use VSS features, you must also install the following:

- IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module Version 5.3.3 (required for basic VSS operations)
Additional features

Data Protection for Exchange helps protect and manage Exchange Server data by making it easy to perform the following actions:

- Back up Exchange Server storage groups and transaction logs
- Maintain multiple versions of Exchange Server storage group and transaction log backups
- Restore storage group and transaction log backups and replay the transaction log files
- Automatically inactivate previous backups when performing a full backup
- Automate scheduled backups (see Appendix A, “Using the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler,” on page 115)
- Set automatic expiration of backup objects that are based on version limit and retention period (see “How Tivoli Storage Manager server policy affects Data Protection for Exchange” on page 13)
- Monitor results through the Data Protection for Exchange activity log and automatically prune the activity log
- Query a local Exchange Server or a Tivoli Storage Manager server for configuration information
- Legacy restore of mailbox databases into the Exchange Server 2003 Recovery Storage Group (RSG)
- Legacy back up and restore of Exchange Site Replication Service (SRS) databases
- Legacy back up and restore of Exchange Key Management Service (KMS) databases (Exchange 2000 Server only)

2 The term local shadow volumes is used throughout this document to describe data that is stored on shadow volumes localized to a disk storage subsystem.

Data Protection for Exchange performs online backups and restores of Microsoft Exchange Server storage groups to Tivoli Storage Manager storage and local shadow volumes. You can perform backups and restores using a command-line or graphical user interface (GUI) on a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 system. Note that VSS operations require Windows 2003. Refer to your Exchange Server documentation for complete, detailed information regarding the backup and restore of Microsoft Exchange Servers.

Data Protection for Exchange operations use the Tivoli Storage Manager application program interface (API) to communicate with the Tivoli Storage Manager server and use the Exchange API to communicate with the Exchange Server. In addition to using these APIs, Data Protection for Exchange VSS operations also use the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client and Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service technology to produce an online snapshot (point-in-time consistent copy) of Exchange data that can be stored on local shadow volumes or on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.

You must install Data Protection for Exchange on the same machine as the Exchange Server. Data Protection for Exchange must be able to connect to a Tivoli Storage Manager server running on any supported operating system. See “Software and operating system” on page 20 for the required level of Tivoli Storage Manager server. Optionally, the Tivoli Storage Manager server can be on the same machine as the Exchange Server. Data Protection for Exchange also supports operations in an MSCS environment.
• Participate in Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) fail-over environments (see “Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) Support” on page 16)
• Obtain online task and concept help (see “Documentation” on page 16)
• View online documentation for Data Protection for Exchange
• Globalization Support

Backup Processing: Overview

A backup performed by Data Protection for Exchange creates a copy of an Exchange Server storage group on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. The backup includes any associated transaction logs.

When a Legacy backup operation is initiated, Data Protection for Exchange performs the following actions:
1. Begins a session with a Tivoli Storage Manager server.
2. Informs the Exchange Server that a backup is ready to begin.
3. Forwards data from the Exchange Server to the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
4. Informs the Exchange Server that the backup is complete.
5. Ends the Tivoli Storage Manager server session.

Data Protection for Exchange provides backup and restore functions for the Exchange storage groups and associated transaction logs. Data Protection for Exchange does not provide a complete disaster recovery solution for an Exchange Server. In a disaster recovery situation, Data Protection for Exchange only restores storage groups. Other files need to be restored in a disaster recovery situation. Refer to your Microsoft Exchange Server documentation for a comprehensive discussion of disaster recovery considerations.

Personal folders and personal address books that are stored on Outlook clients are not protected by Data Protection for Exchange. The Tivoli Storage Manager Backup-Archive client can be used on the Outlook client platform to back up and restore these files. Since the Outlook client normally keeps these files locked when running, you should stop the Outlook client before backing up or restoring these files. Note that since Tivoli Storage Manager Backup-Archive client provides open file support, you may be able to back up and restore these files while the Outlook client is running.

VSS Backup processing: Overview

It is important to understand that Data Protection for Exchange VSS Backup operations are implemented through the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client. The client serves as the VSS Requestor that communicates with VSS to access the Exchange data in order to create shadow copies of Exchange storage groups. Thus, Data Protection for Exchange serves as a front end for VSS Backup operations and performs the following actions when a VSS Backup operation is initiated:
1. Validates the state of Exchange server objects.
2. Begins a session with a Tivoli Storage Manager server.
3. Verifies that the VSS service is running and that the Exchange writer is available.
4. The Tivoli Storage Manager VSS Requestor lists the backup components through the VSS Writer.
5. The Tivoli Storage Manager VSS Requestor performs the VSS snapshot backup preparation stage.
6. The Tivoli Storage Manager VSS Requestor performs the actual VSS Backup.
7. The Tivoli Storage Manager VSS Requestor performs an integrity check on the VSS Backup.
8. The Tivoli Storage Manager VSS Requestor backs up the data (and metadata) to a Tivoli Storage Manager server. Optionally, the movement of data to a Tivoli Storage Manager server can be off-loaded to an alternate machine that has the Tivoli Storage Manager VSS Requestor installed and configured.
9. The Tivoli Storage Manager VSS Requestor marks the backup as complete in VSS.
10. Ends the Tivoli Storage Manager server session.

Because of the role the backup-archive client performs as the VSS Requestor, features such as LAN free backup, database encryption, and data compression require that options related to these features be specified in the backup-archive client options file (and not the Data Protection for Exchange options file) for VSS operations.

**Note:** You must install the *Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Exchange VSS Integration Module* to perform VSS operations. This module enables the backup-archive client to perform as the VSS Requestor.

**VSS Service**
The VSS Service manages and directs three VSS software applications:

**VSS Writer**
The VSS Writer is the Microsoft Exchange Server. It is installed with the Exchange Server 2003 software and requires no configuration.

**VSS Requestor**
The VSS Requestor is the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client.

**VSS Provider**
The VSS provider manages the volumes where the Exchange data resides. Configuration requirements are based upon the type of VSS provider used in your environment. For example:

- If you are using the standard Windows System provider (referred to as the Windows VSS System Provider throughout this book), no configuration is required.
- If you are using a VSS software provider, consult the documentation provided with your VSS software provider.
- If your Exchange storage is configured on a disk storage subsystem and you plan to perform Off-loaded backups or full-copy snapshot backups (versus copy-on-write (COW) snapshot backups as described in “VSS Backup” on page 6), you must install a VSS hardware provider.
- If you plan to perform VSS Instant Restores, be aware that IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller is the only storage subsystem that supports VSS Instant Restores. Therefore, you MUST install and configure IBM TotalStorage Support for Microsoft Virtual Disk and Volume Shadow Copy Services as your VSS hardware provider in order to perform VSS Instant Restores. VSS provider support and documentation for IBM TotalStorage disk storage subsystems is available at the following Web site: http://www-1.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?rs=591&uid=ssg1s4000342

For more information about VSS technology, see the Microsoft Technical Reference document "How Volume Shadow Copy Service Works” at the following Web site: http://www.microsoft.com/technet/prodtechnol/windowsserver2003 /library/techRef/2b0d2457-b7d8-42c3-b6c9-59c145b7765f.mspx
Backup types

Data Protection for Exchange provides five types of backup:

Full Backup (Legacy and VSS)
A full backup backs up the specified storage group as well as associated transaction logs. Data Protection for Exchange deletes these log files after the storage group and logs are successfully backed up. The log files are not deleted if storage groups are not mounted.

Incremental Backup (Legacy only)
An incremental backup only backs up transaction logs, and then deletes them. These log files are not deleted if the backup fails. Restoration of an Exchange Server storage group from an incremental backup requires the following:
- Restore of the last full backup
- Restore of any other incremental backups performed between the full backup and this incremental backup
- Restore of this incremental backup

The log files are not deleted if storage groups are not mounted.

Differential Backup (Legacy only)
A differential backup only backs up transaction logs, but does not delete them. If you perform a full backup and then perform only differential backups, the last full backup plus the latest differential backup has all data needed to bring the storage group back to the most recent state. This type of backup is also called a cumulative incremental backup.

Restoring an Exchange Server storage group from a differential backup requires the following:
- Restore of the last full backup
- Restore of this differential backup, but no other differential backups

Copy Backup (Legacy and VSS)
A copy backup is similar to a full backup except that transaction log files are not deleted after the backup. A copy backup is used to make a full backup of the Exchange Server storage group without disrupting any backup procedures that use incremental or differential backups.

Database Copy Backup (Legacy only)
A database copy backup is a special type that backs up only the specified database as well as its associated transaction logs. The transaction log files are not deleted after the backup. A database copy backup is used to make a special full backup of the database without disrupting any backup procedures that use incremental or differential backups.

Note: When circular logging is enabled, you cannot use differential or incremental backups. This is because data loss could occur if the log wrapped before an incremental or differential backup is done. If you choose a backup strategy that involves incremental or differential backups, you must disable circular logging for the Exchange storage group from the Exchange Administrator program.

For more information on circular logging, see your Microsoft Exchange Server documentation.
Backup methods

Legacy Backup
A legacy backup is a specialized API backup that functions with the Exchange server storage engine. It is occasionally referred to as the Exchange server streaming backup and restore API. This is the type of backup provided by previous releases of Data Protection for Exchange.

The following characteristics are true of Legacy backups:
- Full, copy, incremental, differential, and database copy backup types are supported.
- Backup granularity is at the database and storage group level.
- Backups are stored on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.
- Backups are managed through Tivoli Storage Manager server policy.
- Backups can be performed in a Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) environment.
- Backups provide Exchange Server database zeroing functionality.
- Backups provide Exchange Server database integrity check functionality.
- Backup and restore of SRS and KMS databases is supported.

VSS Backup
A VSS Backup uses Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service technology to produce an online snapshot (point-in-time consistent copy) of Exchange data that can be stored on local shadow volumes or on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. This type of backup means the Exchange server is not in "backup mode" for extended period of time because the length of time to perform the snapshot is usually measured in seconds and not hours. In addition, a VSS Backup allows a snapshot of large amounts of data at one time since the snapshots works at the volume level.

 Optionally, VSS Backups can be stored on local shadow volumes so that there is zero time required to place them into Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. These disks can be set up specifically for supporting VSS snapshot operations and can be accessed directly through standard operating system functions or device-specific APIs. VSS Backups are only available on Exchange Server 2003 and Windows Server 2003.

The following characteristics are true of VSS Backup:
- Full and copy backup types are supported. Incremental, differential, and database copy backup types are not supported.
- Backup granularity is at the storage group level only.
- Backups are managed through Tivoli Storage Manager server policy.
- Backups can be stored on local shadow volumes, Tivoli Storage Manager server storage, or both locations.
- Different policy settings can be defined for each storage location and backup method.
- Backups to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage can be off-loaded to an alternate machine as resource relief for production servers.
- Backups can be performed in a Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) environment.
- Backups do not provide Exchange Server database zeroing functionality.
- Backups provide Exchange Server database integrity check functionality.
- Backup and restore of SRS and KMS are not supported.
• Backup and restore into a Recovery Storage Group are not supported.

Consider the following requirements when planning for VSS Backups:
• Continue to schedule and perform Legacy backups in your strategy.
• Make sure you have a well-defined and tested recovery plan that meets your service level objectives.
• Use single hardware LUNs for each storage group.
• Use basic disks.

If you plan to keep some VSS snapshot backups on local shadow volumes only, make sure to consider the VSS provider-specific implementation and configuration options when setting up your strategy. For example, if your VSS hardware provider supports a full-copy snapshot versus a copy-on-write (COW) snapshot mechanism, be aware that full-copy type implementations have greater disk storage requirements but are less risky because they do not rely on the original volume to restore the data. COW implementations require much less disk storage but rely completely on the original volume to perform a restore. Since these implementations are entirely controlled by the VSS provider and not Data Protection for Exchange, make sure to consult your VSS provider documentation for a complete understanding of your VSS implementation.

• You cannot perform parallel VSS Backups as this feature is not supported by VSS.
• Do not enable circular logging since it has severe limitations and possible negative impacts.
• Do not place multiple volumes on the same LUN. Microsoft recommends that you configure a single volume/single partition/single LUN as 1 to 1 to 1.

System Provider: Be aware that if you are using the Windows VSS System Provider, no configuration is required.

Software or Hardware Provider: If you use a software or hardware provider, consider the following requirements when planning for VSS Backups:
• If a hardware provider is used, the disks that contain Exchange data must be configured as basic.
• Place databases files for each storage group on their own dedicated logical volume.
• Place logs for each storage group on their own logical volume.
• Do not place non-Exchange data on storage volumes that are dedicated to Exchange.
• When using hardware snapshot providers, do not share storage group LUNs with other storage groups or applications.
• Make sure to read and follow specific installation and configuration instructions in the documentation provided by your VSS provider vendor.

SAN Volume Controller: If you use SAN Volume Controller, consider the following requirements when planning for VSS Backups:
• Place databases files for each storage group on their own dedicated logical volume.
• Place logs for each storage group on their own logical volume.
• Do not place non-Exchange data on storage volumes that are dedicated to Exchange.
• When using hardware snapshot providers, do not share storage group LUNs with other storage groups or applications.
• Only one backup is allowed to occur while the background copy process is pending. A new backup is not performed until the background copy process for the previous backup completes. As a result, local backups for SAN Volume Controller storage subsystems should be initiated at a frequency greater than the time required for the background copy process to complete.

**Off-loaded Backup**
An off-loaded backup uses an alternate machine to move the data to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. This type of backup shifts the backup load from the production machine to another machine. This frees the production system to serve the Exchange server. This requires that a VSS hardware provider that supports transportable shadow copy volumes is installed on the production and secondary machines.

---

**Restore Processing: Overview**

A restore obtains backup copies of Exchange storage groups and transaction logs and returns them to the Exchange Server.

The Exchange Information Store service must be running but the databases being restored within the storage group must be dismounted.

When a Legacy restore operation is initiated, Data Protection for Exchange performs the following actions:

1. Data Protection for Exchange prompts the user to dismount the databases or cancel the restore operation entirely. This prompt occurs in the GUI only. Command line interface users must dismount necessary databases.

2. Starts a session with a Tivoli Storage Manager server.

3. Informs the Exchange Server that a restore is about to begin.

4. Restores the specified storage group(s) and logs from the Tivoli Storage Manager server. The logs are restored to a temporary location as specified by the user.

When performing a restore of a mailbox database with Exchange Server 2003, if a Recovery Storage Group exists, the mailbox database will be restored to the Recovery Storage Group instead of to the original storage group. Also, when restoring a mailbox database to a Recovery Storage Group, you must specify the option to replay restored logs only or the restore operation may fail. Select *Replay Restored Logs ONLY* in the GUI Restore Window or specify */recover=applyrestoredlogs* on the command line. This note ONLY applies to Legacy restores. VSS Restores to the Recovery Storage Group are NOT supported by Microsoft.

5. Informs the Exchange Server that the restore has completed. At this point you have the option of:

   • starting recovery
   • mounting the databases (when recovery completes)

6. Ends the Tivoli Storage Manager server session.

Depending on the backup strategy you choose, restoring an Exchange storage group can involve restoring multiple backup objects from the Tivoli Storage Manager server. See “Backup strategies” on page 11.

To restore an individual item such as a message, mailbox, or folder, use Data Protection for Exchange to restore the entire database containing the desired mailbox or public folder to an alternate Exchange Server. From the alternate
Exchange Server, use the Exchange Administrator program to access and copy the item you want. See Appendix C, “Advanced restore procedures,” on page 129 for details on performing this procedure.

You can also use Data Protection for Exchange to restore mailbox databases to a Recovery Storage Group with Exchange Server 2003. See “Exchange 2003 Recovery Storage Group” on page 130 for details on performing this procedure. With Microsoft Exchange Server, you can also use the item Recovery feature of the Exchange Client to recover messages and folders which are accidentally deleted. Exchange 2000 Server and Exchange Server 2003 also provide a "deleted mailbox" feature to recover deleted mailboxes. For more information, see your Microsoft Exchange Server documentation.

The restorfiles command restores the .edb, .stm, and .log files from a specified Data Protection for Exchange backup (that resides on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage) into a specified directory. It also enables third-party Individual Mailbox Restore products. See “RESTOREFILES” on page 90 for more information about this command. The brickback.doc file (located in the default Data Protection for Exchange installation directory) also provides information on how to perform brick-level backup and restore operations.

When a VSS restore operation is initiated, Data Protection for Exchange performs the following actions:
1. Validates the state of Exchange server objects.
2. When using the Data Protection for Exchange GUI, you are prompted whether to dismount the databases within the selected storage group.
3. Begins a session with a Tivoli Storage Manager server.
4. Verifies that the VSS service is running and that the Exchange writer is available.
5. The Tivoli Storage Manager VSS Requestor performs the VSS snapshot restore preparation stage.
6. The Tivoli Storage Manager VSS Requestor restores the backup data.
7. The Tivoli Storage Manager VSS Requestor marks the restore as complete in VSS.
8. Optionally, mounts databases to run recovery.

**Restore methods**

**Legacy Restore**
A legacy restore is the type of restore provided by previous releases of Data Protection for Exchange. It restores legacy backups (Exchange database files and log files) from Tivoli Storage Manager server storage to their original location. Like a legacy backup, it uses a specialized API restore that functions with the Exchange server storage engine. It is occasionally referred to as the Exchange server streaming backup and restore API.

**VSS Restore**
This restores VSS Backups (Exchange database files and log files) that reside on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage to their original location. The following characteristics are true of VSS Restores:

- Full and copy backup types can be restored. Incremental, differential, and database copy backup types are not supported by VSS and therefore, cannot be restored.
• Restore granularity is at the database level.
• Supports restoring one (or more) storage groups from a VSS snapshot backup located on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.
• VSS requires that data must always be restored to the same drive letters and paths as existed during the original backup.
• Restores can be performed in a Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) environment.
• Due to a Microsoft limitation, Recovery Storage Group (RSG) restores and restores of SRS and KMS backups are not supported.
• Supports restoring a VSS Backup (directly from Tivoli Storage Manager server storage) to an alternate machine.

VSS Fast Restore
A VSS Fast Restore restores VSS Backups that reside on local shadow volumes. In general, restore processing can conclude within minutes instead of hours in this situation. The following characteristics are true of VSS Fast Restore restores:
• Full and copy backup types can be restored. Incremental, differential, and database copy backup types are not supported by VSS and therefore, cannot be restored.
• Restore granularity is at the database level.
• The key component of producing a VSS Fast Restore is the speed with which the application can become operational with the data that resides on local shadow volumes. Be aware that even though the data is restored relatively quickly, the transaction logs must still be replayed after the restore and therefore, the time of recovery for the application can increase.

VSS Instant Restore
A VSS Instant Restore is when a set of target volumes (that contain a valid snapshot) are copied back to the original source volumes using hardware-assisted volume-level copy mechanisms. The application can return to normal operations as soon as the hardware-assisted volume-level copy has been started and the log replay is complete.

The key component of producing a VSS Instant Restore is the speed with which the application can become operational with the data that resides on local shadow volumes. Be aware that even though the data is restored relatively quickly, the transaction logs must still be replayed after the restore and therefore, the time of recovery for the application can increase.

Be aware of the following considerations when planning for VSS Instant Restore:
• Requires IBM TotalStorage Support for Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service software.
• Requires IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller.
• Backups must reside on the same SAN Volume Controller storage subsystem to which they are restored.
Backup strategies

Depending on your specific requirements regarding network traffic, backup window, and acceptable restore times, you might choose to follow different backup strategies. It is important to completely understand all aspects of Exchange Server disaster recovery as well as backup considerations recommended by Microsoft. Refer to your Exchange Server documentation for this information. Some commonly used strategies are described below.

- If you choose a strategy that involves incremental or differential backups, circular logging must be disabled on the storage groups of the Exchange Server.
- You should not mix incremental and differential backups. Differential backups will only back up changes made since the last incremental backup. Incremental backups performed after differential backups contain all changes since the last incremental or full backup. Restores are more complicated when using a mixed strategy. You need to determine on an individual basis which transaction log backups (differential or incremental) to restore along with the full backup.
- If you plan to use VSS Backups, you should continue to use Legacy Backups as well.
- When scheduling Legacy and VSS Backups, make sure they do not overlap.
- Incremental and differential legacy backups cannot be restored with full or copy VSS Backups.

Full backups only

This approach is best for Exchange Servers that are relatively small because each backup contains enough data to restore the entire storage group. Each backup takes longer to perform, but the restore process is the most efficient because only the most recent (or other appropriate) full backup needs to be restored.

Full backup plus incremental backups

This strategy is commonly used when the normal backup window or network capacity cannot support a full backup each time. In such cases, a periodic full backup followed by a series of incremental backups allows the backup window and network traffic to be minimized during peak usage times. For example, you can perform full backups on the weekend and incremental backups during the week. The full backups can be done during low usage times when a larger backup window and increased network traffic can be tolerated. The restore process becomes more complex, however, because a full backup, as well as subsequent incremental backups, must be restored. In addition, transactions within the logs must be applied which increases process time. As a result, the more transactions applied, the longer the recovery process.

If you use this backup strategy, you must decide whether the Tivoli Storage Manager storage management policies are modified, to ensure all incremental backups are stored together on the Tivoli Storage Manager server (collocated). This helps improve restore performance by reducing the number of media mounts necessary for restoring a series of incremental backups. See “How Tivoli Storage Manager server policy affects Data Protection for Exchange” on page 13 for more information.

Full backup plus differentials

This process provides an easier restore than the full plus incremental backup. This approach might be useful if your backup window and network capacity can handle the backup of all transaction logs that accumulate between full backups.
This is because it requires the transfer of only one differential plus the last full backup to accomplish a restore. However, the same amount of data must be transferred in the differential image, as in the series of incremental backups.

Therefore, a full backup plus differential backup policy increases network traffic and Tivoli Storage Manager storage usage. This assumes that the differential backups are performed with the same frequency as the incremental backups.

You should carefully consider whether there is sufficient advantage to justify the additional resource necessary to resend all prior transaction logs with each subsequent differential backup.

**Using VSS and Legacy Backups together**

Microsoft supports and recommends using both methods of backup in your complete backup strategy. However, Microsoft also states that you cannot mix the two types of backups. For example, a Legacy incremental or differential backup cannot be applied to a VSS full or copy backup. This is noted in the Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 SDK documentation. The Exchange store will prevent you from mixing backup types.

Also, be aware of the following best practice:

- Legacy and VSS Backups to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage are usually dictated by time, not versions.
- Backups to local shadow volumes are usually dictated by versions because of space limitations and provisioning of VSS storage.

*Table 2. Backup strategy characteristics*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy characteristics</th>
<th>Legacy backup only</th>
<th>Legacy backup plus VSS backup</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Available backup types:</td>
<td>COPY 1+ per month</td>
<td>Legacy COPY 1+ per month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FULL 1+ per week</td>
<td>Legacy FULL 1+ per week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INCR 1+ per day</td>
<td>VSS FULL 1+ per day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available restore types:</td>
<td>Restore to production Exchange Server</td>
<td>VSS:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- VSS Restore¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- VSS Fast Restore²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- VSS Instant Restore³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Legacy:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Restore to the production Exchange Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore attributes:</td>
<td>FULL, COPY, INCR, DIFF, DBCOPY</td>
<td>FULL, COPY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server and storage group level restore granularity</td>
<td>Server and storage group level restore granularity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point-in-time recovery</td>
<td></td>
<td>Point-in-time recovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roll-forward recovery</td>
<td></td>
<td>Roll-forward recovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore to alternate machine</td>
<td></td>
<td>Restore to alternate machine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Files are copied from the Tivoli Storage Manager server directly to the production source volumes.
2. Files are copied from local shadow volumes directly to the production source volumes.
3. Snapshot volumes are copied to the production source volumes. SAN Volume Controller is required to perform this type of restore.

How Tivoli Storage Manager server policy affects Data Protection for Exchange

Tivoli Storage Manager policy determines how Data Protection for Exchange backups are managed on Tivoli Storage Manager storage. The Tivoli Storage Manager server recognizes Data Protection for Exchange as a node. Data that is backed up to Tivoli Storage Manager storage from this Data Protection for Exchange node is stored and managed according to settings specified for Tivoli Storage Manager server policy items.

Tivoli Storage Manager policy can manage the VSS Backups that are placed on local shadow volumes as well as in Tivoli Storage Manager server storage pools. The Tivoli Storage Manager server is responsible for managing VSS Backups, whether the backup is stored on local shadow volumes or on the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Be aware that while a VSS snapshot (created for back up to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage) is deleted after the backup completes, a VSS snapshot (created for back up to local shadow volumes) remains active until the backup version is expired according to the policy settings for VSS Backups on local shadow volumes.

The number of local backup versions maintained by the Tivoli Storage Manager server is determined by the value specified by the Tivoli Storage Manager server `verexists` parameter (defined in the copy group of the management class to which the local backup belongs). The number of Target Volumes sets allocated for local backups should be equal to the `verexists` parameter. For example, if `verexists`=3, then at least three sets of Target Volumes must be allocated for the backup to complete successfully. If only two sets of Target Volumes are allocated, the third and subsequent backup attempt will fail. If more sets of Target Volumes exist than the number specified by the `verexists` parameter, these sets are ignored by the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

The policy management of local backups is responsible for reconciling the local backup repository with the information stored on the Tivoli Storage Manager server. For example, if Target Volume LUNs that were used for a local backup are removed from the storage subsystem, the information representing the backup on the Tivoli Storage Manager server must be reconciled. Likewise if the Tivoli Storage Manager server policy has determined that a local backup copy is no longer needed, the local backup manager must free the Target Volume LUNs to the storage subsystem so that these LUNs can be used for future backup operations. Tivoli Storage Manager automatically detects these situations and performs the reconciliation.
Important

Tivoli Storage Manager requires that sufficient storage space be available to create shadow volumes required for VSS Backup processing. Even when the VSS Backup destination is the Tivoli Storage Manager server, storage space to create a shadow volume is still required (though on a temporary basis). Since the value of the `verexists` parameter (specified for your local backup policy) determines the number of backup versions to retain on local shadow volumes, a `verexists=1` setting will cause the deletion of an existing backup on local shadow volumes (during a VSS Backup to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage) in order to create enough temporary space for the new snapshot. Therefore, if you want to keep $N$ backups on local shadow volumes and also perform VSS Backups to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage, make sure you provision enough storage space on local shadow volumes and specify `verexists=N+1`.

Make sure to specify a `verexists` value that accommodates your VSS Backup goals. If you have limited storage space for VSS operations and are restricted to a `verexists=1` setting, you can take advantage of the Backup Destination BOTH option. This stores the backup on local shadow volumes as well as sends a copy to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.

It is possible for VSS Backups (that Data Protection for Exchange creates and stores on local shadow volumes) to be modified and deleted from outside of Tivoli Storage Manager control. For example, the Microsoft VSSADMIN DELETE SHADOWS command can remove a VSS Backup managed by Tivoli Storage Manager without Tivoli Storage Manager being able to prevent such a removal. In such a situation, Tivoli Storage Manager recognizes the backup removal and reconciles its index of available backups with what resides on local shadow volumes. It is important to be aware of this potential for removal and establish a strategy that protects VSS Backup data stored on local shadow volumes from being compromised.

Be aware that the following issues impact your Tivoli Storage Manager policy for managing VSS Backups:

- Overall backup strategy.
- Length of time that VSS Backups will reside on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.
- Number of VSS Backup versions to reside on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.
- Types of VSS Backups to reside on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.
- Number of VSS Backup versions to reside on local shadow volumes.
- Types of VSS Backups to reside on local shadow volumes.
- The amount of available target volume storage provisioned for VSS operations.
Security

Data Protection for Exchange must be registered to the Tivoli Storage Manager server and use the appropriate node name and password when connecting to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Standard Tivoli Storage Manager security requirements apply to Data Protection for Exchange. Data Protection for Exchange must be running under an account that has Domain Administrator privileges and Read/Write access to the local registry.

Performance

Many factors can affect the backup and restore performance of your Exchange Server. Some of these, such as hardware configuration, network type, and capacity, are beyond the control of Data Protection for Exchange. These factors are not within the scope of this document. However, some options that are related to Data Protection for Exchange can be tuned for optimum performance. See “Specifying Data Protection for Exchange options” on page 31 for details regarding these options.

In addition, be aware of how the following issues affect performance:

- Backups to local shadow volumes eliminates the transfer of data to the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
- During VSS Backup processing, integrated Exchange integrity checking reads every page in the files to be backed up. As a result, backup processing time can be significant. You can specify the `skipintegritycheck` parameter to bypass integrity checking. However, this parameter is only valid for copy-type VSS Backups as Microsoft requires integrity checking be performed for full-type VSS Backups.
- The time required to perform a snapshot ranges from seconds to minutes, depending on the type of VSS provider used.
- Backup-archive client settings can affect performance when backing up data to the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

Buffering (Legacy only)

Data Protection for Exchange is a multithread application that uses asynchronous execution threads to transfer data between the Exchange servers and Tivoli Storage Manager servers. To accomplish this, multiple data buffers are used to allow one thread to receive data from one side, while another thread sends data to the other side. For example, one thread reads data from an Exchange Server while another thread sends data to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. As a result, the Exchange Server continues sending data to available buffers regardless of the ability of the Tivoli Storage Manager server to receive the data. The number and size of buffers that are allocated for this can be configured through the Settings dialog in the Data Protection for Exchange GUI. The number and size of buffers can also be specified in the `buffers` and `buffersize` parameters on the command line interface. For more information, see Chapter 5, “Using the Command Line Interface,” on page 55.

LAN Free

Running Data Protection for Exchange in a LAN free environment allows data to be sent directly to storage devices. As a result, data bypasses potential network congestion. However, you must be properly equipped to operate in a LAN free
environment. The Tivoli Storage Manager Managed System for SAN Storage Agent User's Guide provides detailed information about setting up a LAN Free environment.

In addition to specific LAN free requirements, you must specify the enablelanfree option for Data Protection for Exchange to activate this LAN free feature. 
- For Legacy backups, specify enablelanfree yes in the Data Protection for Exchange options file.
- For VSS Backups, specify enablelanfree yes in the backup-archive client options file.

Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) Support

Data Protection for Exchange supports Exchange Servers running in MSCS configurations. The list below provides information you should consider when running Data Protection for Exchange in an MSCS environment.

**Note:** References to the Exchange Server in this section pertain to the virtual Exchange Server name in an MSCS environment.
- Data Protection for Exchange must be installed on both nodes of the cluster. In addition, when installing Data Protection for Exchange, it must be installed on a disk local to each node (not a shared cluster disk).
- Use identical configurations in the Tivoli Storage Manager options file when configuring Data Protection for Exchange on each node of the cluster. You must specify clusternode yes in the Data Protection for Exchange options file.
- When using the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler for automating backups, you must install the scheduler service on both nodes of the cluster to enable failover support. See Appendix A, “Using the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler,” on page 115 for more information.
- The Tivoli Storage Manager server treats backups as coming from a single server (the virtual Exchange server) regardless of the cluster node on which the backup was performed.
- When running in an MSCS environment, Data Protection for Exchange **must** be invoked from the command line with the /excserver parameter. For example, if the Exchange virtual server name on the Microsoft Cluster is excvs1, the GUI invocation is
tdpexc /excserver=exc1

and an example command line interface invocation is
tdpexc cc backup "First Storage Group" full /excserver=excvs1

Documentation

Data Protection for Exchange provides online help in addition to an online version of this User's Guide in .PDF and compiled HTML (.CHM) format. Online help provides specific information related to tasks that are performed in the GUI.

Globalization

Data Protection for Exchange supports the following languages:
- American English
- Brazilian Portuguese
- French
If you want to use a language other than English, you must install the Language Pack for the desired language. See the description of “Language Packs” on page 22 for detailed information.
Chapter 2. Installing Data Protection for Exchange

This section provides information on the client environment that must exist before you install Data Protection for Exchange. Detailed instructions are also provided on installing Data Protection for Exchange on a Windows 2000 Server or Windows Server 2003 workstation.

See the READMEPEXC_enu.htm file that is shipped on the product installation media for current information.

Environment requirements

This section describes the minimum hardware, software, and operating system information required for the proper installation of Data Protection for Exchange.

Hardware

Data Protection for Exchange requires the following minimum hardware:

Table 3. Minimum hardware requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Hardware Description</th>
<th>Disk Space</th>
<th>RAM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Legacy or VSS Backup and Restore</td>
<td>One Intel Pentium or equivalent 166 (or higher) processor.</td>
<td>11 MB</td>
<td>48 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSS Off-loaded backup</td>
<td>A storage subsystem&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>See Provider documentation</td>
<td>See Provider documentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSS Instant Restore</td>
<td>IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller Version 2.1.x (or later)</td>
<td>See SAN Volume Controller documentation</td>
<td>See SAN Volume Controller documentation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data Protection for Exchange VSS operations are available on any hardware that supports Microsoft VSS requirements. Refer to your VSS provider documentation for required levels. The following list identifies some hardware storage subsystems that were tested with Data Protection for Exchange VSS operations:

- IBM TotalStorage DS6000 and a machine with a processor supported by DS6000 with IBM Common Interface Model (CIM) Agent for DS Open API.
- IBM TotalStorage DS8000 and a machine with a processor supported by DS8000 with IBM Common Interface Model (CIM) Agent for DS Open API.
- IBM TotalStorage N3700 with Network Appliance (NetApp) SnapDrive Version 3.2 (or later). Make sure to see important NetApp requirement and configuration information on the READMEPEXC_enu.htm file.
- NetApp fabric-attached storage (FAS) system with NetApp SnapDrive Version 3.2 (or later).
- IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller version 2.1.x (or later).

Contact your hardware storage subsystem vendor for exact details of their support of VSS operations.

You must have a hardware storage subsystem that supports transportable...
shadow copies and delivers a VSS hardware provider for the hardware
storage subsystem that adheres to Microsoft VSS Provider API standards.

For detailed information regarding current hardware product compatibility
requirements, see the IBM TotalStorage Web site: http://www-
03.ibm.com/servers/storage

Software and operating system

Data Protection for Exchange requires the following levels of Tivoli Storage
Manager software:

- Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client Version 5.3.3 (or later).
- Tivoli Storage Manager API Version 5.3.3 (or later).
- Tivoli Storage Manager server
  - Version 5.3.0 (or later) is required for Legacy backup and restore.
  - Version 5.3.2 (or later) is required for VSS operations.

Data Protection for Exchange requires the following minimum software and
operating system combinations:

Table 4. Minimum software and operating system requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Operating System</th>
<th>Exchange Server</th>
<th>VSS Provider</th>
<th>Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Legacy Backup and</td>
<td>Microsoft Windows 2000 ¹</td>
<td>Exchange 2000 Server³</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>One of the following:</td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Microsoft Windows 2000³</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Microsoft Windows 2003</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic VSS support</td>
<td>Microsoft Windows 2003²</td>
<td>Exchange Server 2003⁴</td>
<td>Any VSS provider that supports VSS providers.</td>
<td>Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module Version 5.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSS Off-loaded Backup</td>
<td>Microsoft Windows 2003²</td>
<td>Exchange Server 2003⁴</td>
<td>Any VSS provider that supports transportable shadow copies.⁵</td>
<td>Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module Version 5.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSS Instant Restore</td>
<td>Microsoft Windows 2003²</td>
<td>Exchange Server 2003⁴</td>
<td>• IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller Version 2.1.x (or later)⁹</td>
<td>Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module Version 5.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• IBM TotalStorage VSS Hardware Provider 2.4.2 (or later)</td>
<td>Hardware Devices Snapshot Integration Module Version 5.3.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Windows 2000 Server, Advance Server, or DataCenter Server. All versions
must be at Service Pack 4 (or later).

Exchange 2000 Server must be at Service Pack 3 (or later). MSCS support is available.

Exchange Server 2003 must be at Service Pack 1 (or later). MSCS support is available.

The VSS hardware provider must be installed on both machines that are involved in an Off-loaded backup.

IBM Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) 1.6.0.2 with Host Attachment Scripts 1.1.0.3. or (later) is required.

Installation procedure

Attention: See the READMEDEPEXC_enu.htm file for the latest information regarding Data Protection for Exchange.

These instructions step you through the installation of Data Protection for Exchange. Make sure to read the Installation Considerations section for important installation information.

Data Protection for Exchange is available in the following packages:

Paid in Full
This package contains a license component and is a complete stand-alone release of the product.

Program Temporary Fix (PTF)
This package does not contain a license component. It is created to install over a previously installed version of Data Protection for Exchange.

Try and Buy
This package contains a license component that allows installation and use for sixty days.

Installation considerations:
• The default installation directory is Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPExchange. If a Tivoli Storage Manager product exists, the path to that product becomes the Data Protection for Exchange default installation directory. You can override the default installation directory and specify a different installation directory. However, installing all Tivoli Storage Manager products and components into the same base directory is highly recommended. The base directory is Program Files\Tivoli\TSM. Note that you cannot override subdirectory names.
• If you are storing backup objects created by Data Protection for Exchange Version 1, you must retain Data Protection for Exchange Version 1 for as long as you retain those backup objects.
• To uninstall Data Protection for Exchange (Version 1, Version 2, Version 5.1.5, or Version 5.2.1), open the Control Panel on your Windows workstation and select the Add/Remove Programs item.
Follow these steps to install Data Protection for Exchange:

1. Insert the Data Protection for Exchange CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

   **Note:**
   - Data Protection for Exchange must be installed from an account having Domain Administrator privileges to the local system.

If autostart is not enabled, perform the following steps:

a. Select Run from the Start menu.

b. Enter \TDPEXchange\x32\client\setup where X is your CD-ROM drive letter.

c. Click OK to start the installation program.

2. Select a language for the installation (see “Language Packs” for more information).

3. Follow the installation instructions contained in the prompt windows.

4. Click Finish to complete the installation of the Data Protection for Exchange base product.

5. (VSS only): If you plan to perform basic VSS operations, you must also install the Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module. This module is located in the \tsmc\x32\plugin directory on the Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services CD-ROM where X is your CD-ROM drive letter. Double-click the "setup" file to launch the installation. This module installs in the Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPEXchange directory.

6. (VSS only): If you plan to perform VSS Instant Restores, you must also install the Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Hardware Devices Snapshot Integration Module (in addition to the Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module). This module is located in the \tsmc\x32\plugin directory on the Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services CD-ROM where X is your CD-ROM drive letter. Double-click the "setup" file to launch the installation. This module installs in the Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\plugins directory.

**Language Packs**

To view the Data Protection for Exchange GUI, command line output, and messages in a language other than English, install the desired Language Pack provided on the product CD-ROM. The Language Pack executable files are located in the TDPEXchange\x32\languages\xxx directory on the product CD-ROM. The xxx directory represents the three-letter country code associated with that language. Double-click the "setup" file to launch the installation. After installing the Language Pack, activate the language by updating the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg by default) using either of these methods:

- Use the set command with the language parameter to specify the desired language. For example:

  tdpexc set lang=fra

  See the description of the language parameter on page 101 for a list of available languages and their three-letter country codes.

- Use the Configuration Editor in the Data Protection for Exchange GUI by selecting Edit->Configuration->Regional->Language. The GUI Configuration Editor will show the installed languages in their long form. For example:

  English (United States)
If you are installing Data Protection for Exchange in a Microsoft Cluster Server environment, repeat the installation procedure on the secondary node of your cluster.

After successfully installing Data Protection for Exchange, see Chapter 3, “Configuring Data Protection for Exchange,” on page 25 for important configuration information.
Chapter 3. Configuring Data Protection for Exchange

This chapter is divided into two major sections:

- **Part I: Configuration overview**
  This section provides detailed information about setting Data Protection for Exchange and Tivoli Storage Manager options, policies, and preferences. For best results, it is recommended that you read this information carefully before performing any configuration tasks.

- **Part II: Configuration procedure**
  This section provides detailed step-by-step instructions on how to configure Data Protection for Exchange for both Legacy and VSS Backups.

- **Part III: Verify your configuration**
  This section provides instructions on how to verify that Data Protection for Exchange is installed and configured properly, including those components required for VSS Backups. Data Protection for Exchange should be ready for backup and restore processing upon successful completion of this verification procedure.

**What applications must I configure?** This table identifies the software applications that must be configured to perform certain features.

**Table 5. List of applications to configure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To use these features</th>
<th>You must configure these applications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Legacy backup</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legacy restore</td>
<td>Tivoli Storage Manager server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client scheduler</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| VSS Backup            | Data Protection for Exchange           |
| VSS Restore           | Tivoli Storage Manager server          |
|                       | Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client scheduler |
|                       | Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client local Client Acceptor Daemon (CAD) (Local DSMAGENT Node) |
|                       | VSS software provider and/or VSS hardware provider |

| VSS Backup            | Data Protection for Exchange           |
| VSS Restore           | Tivoli Storage Manager server          |
|                       | Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client scheduler |
|                       | Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client local CAD (Local DSMAGENT Node) |
|                       | VSS software provider and/or VSS hardware provider |

| VSS Backup            | Data Protection for Exchange           |
| VSS Restore           | Tivoli Storage Manager server          |
| Off-loaded backup     | Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client scheduler |
|                       | Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client local CAD (Local DSMAGENT Node) |
|                       | Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client remote CAD (Remote DSMAGENT Node) |
|                       | VSS software provider and/or VSS hardware provider |
### Table 5. List of applications to configure (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To use these features:</th>
<th>You must configure these applications:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• VSS Backup</td>
<td>• Data Protection for Exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• VSS Restore</td>
<td>• Tivoli Storage Manager server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• VSS Instant Restore</td>
<td>• Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client scheduler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Off-loaded backup</td>
<td>• Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client local CAD (Local DSMAGENT Node)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client remote CAD (Remote DSMAGENT Node)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VSS software provider and/or VSS hardware provider</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Part I: Configuration overview

This section provides guidelines about available options, recommended settings, and other useful information needed to configure Data Protection for Exchange. It is recommended that you review this information before performing the configuration tasks described in “Part II: Configuration procedure” on page 37. For an overview of the various VSS components, see “VSS Service” on page 4.

### Back up to Tivoli Storage Manager storage versus back up to local shadow volumes

When creating policy for your backups, consider these differences between backing up data to Tivoli Storage Manager storage versus VSS disks.

#### Tivoli Storage Manager storage

Backups to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage are usually dictated by time, not versions.

A Tivoli Storage Manager backup operation stores the backed up data on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. Although this type of backup typically takes longer to process than a backup to local shadow volumes, a Tivoli Storage Manager backup is necessary when long term storage is needed such as saving Exchange data on tape for archival purposes. Tivoli Storage Manager backups are also necessary for disaster recovery situations when the disks that are used for local backups are unavailable. By maintaining multiple backup copies on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage, a point in time copy is available should backups on the local shadow volumes become corrupt or deleted.

#### Local shadow volumes

Backups to local shadow volumes are usually dictated by versions because of space limitations and provisioning of VSS storage.

Sufficient local storage space must be available on local shadow volumes for a VSS backup strategy to be successful. Make sure there is enough available storage space assigned to the volumes to accommodate your Data Protection for Exchange backup operations. Environment and storage resources also impact how many backup versions are maintained on local shadow volumes (for VSS Fast Restore and VSS Instant Restore) and how many backup versions are maintained on Tivoli
Storage Manager server (VSS Restore and longer term storage). It is recommended that different sets of policies be created for backups to both local shadow volumes and to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. If you are using a VSS provider other than the Windows VSS System Provider, make sure to review the documentation for that specific VSS provider.

**VSS operations in DS and SAN Volume Controller environments**

In order to determine how much storage space is required for each local backup, be aware that the backup LUNs require the same amount of storage space as the original LUNs. For example, if you have a 100GB database residing on a 200GB LUN, you will need a 200GB LUN for each backup version.

**VSS operations in IBM N-series and NetApp environments**

Be aware that in environments that contain IBM N-series and NetApp systems, snapshots created using the IBM N-series and NetApp snapshot provider are stored on the same volume where the LUN resides. Disk space consumed by a local backup consists only of the blocks that have changed since the last local backup was created. The following formula can be used to help determine how much space is required for each local backup:

\[
\text{Amount of data changed per hour} \times \text{number of hours before a local backup expires} = \text{space required for each local backup}
\]

In addition, Write Anywhere File Layout (WAFL) reserves blocks equal to two times the specified size of the LUN to be used. This space reservation ensures writes for virtual disks. The following example demonstrates how to calculate the size of these volumes:

| Database size of an Exchange storage group: 100GB |
| Number of local backups to be kept: 3            |
| Snapshot for TSM backup: 1                      |
| Duration for TSM backup: 2 hr                   |
| Backup frequency: 3 hrs                         |

The duration before a local backup is expired: 9 hrs
Amount of data changed/added/deleted per hr: 50MB
Space required for 3 local backups + 1 TSM backup: 450*3 + 50*2 = 1450 MB
The volume size required for the storage group: 100*2 (space reservation) + 1.5 = 201.5 GB

**Recommended Tivoli Storage Manager policy settings**

Make sure the following policy items are defined with the recommended settings.

Consult your Tivoli Storage Manager administrator or see the *IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Administrator’s Guide* and the *IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Administrator’s Reference* for complete information on defining or updating these Tivoli Storage Manager policy items.

**Domain**

Create a policy domain on the Tivoli Storage Manager server to be used exclusively for Data Protection for Exchange backups.

**Policy Set**

Policy sets contain management classes (which contain copy groups) that determine the rules by which Data Protection for Exchange backups are performed and managed. Define the policy set to the policy domain to which Data Protection for Exchange backups belong. Note that the policy set must be activated and only one policy set can be active in the policy domain.
Management Class

Define a management class for backups residing on local shadow volumes and a management class for backups residing on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. Different management classes provide the opportunity for specialized policies for each storage destination. For example, you can maintain six versions of local VSS Backups of a given storage group (VERExist=6) while maintaining only two versions of the same storage group on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage (VERExist=2). In addition, you can create a separate management class for copy backup types for use in long term storage. Such policies can maximize storage resources and provide more control over your storage strategy.

Be aware that since Legacy backups on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage, VSS Backups on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage (COPY and FULL), and VSS Backups on local shadow volumes (COPY and FULL) all have different Tivoli Storage Manager server naming and therefore, can each have their own management class, it is possible to have five active backups of the same storage group. Make sure your backup strategy is planned and well-defined before defining management classes.

Copy Group

Define the copy group as a backup copy group and not an archive copy group. Since Data Protection for Exchange stores all objects as backup objects on Tivoli Storage Manager in backup storage pools, an archive copy group is not required, although an archive copy group can exist. The following backup copy group parameters significantly influence your backup policy:

VERExist
Determined the maximum number of Exchange Server database backup versions to retain for databases that exist on the Data Protection for Exchange client system.

VERDeleted
Determined the maximum number of Exchange Server database backup versions to retain for databases that have been deleted from the Data Protection for Exchange client system after being backed up by Tivoli Storage Manager.

RETExtra
Determined the number of days to retain an Exchange Server database backup version after that version becomes inactive.

RETOOnly
Determined the number of days to retain the last Exchange Server database backup version of a database that has been deleted from the Data Protection for Exchange client system. Be aware that incremental backups do not participate in expirations (due to version limit) because there is never more than one version of an incremental backup object. This is because incremental backups are always uniquely named. However, all Legacy backup objects for an Exchange Server storage group are inactivated when a new full backup of that Exchange Server storage group is performed (VSS backup objects remain active). Therefore, the retention period set in the RETOnly parameter controls the expiration of incremental backup objects.

When setting the value of the RETOnly parameter for incremental backups, the value must be (at a minimum) as long as the value set for the full backup objects to which the incremental backups are associated. You can use the same management class for incremental backups and the full
backup objects (that are retained the longest) to be sure an adequate value is used. However, all Legacy backup objects for an Exchange Server storage group are inactivated when a new Legacy full backup of that Exchange Server storage group is performed (VSS backup objects remain active).

MODE, SERialization, FREquency
You can accept default values for these backup copy group parameters as they are not applicable to Data Protection for Exchange.

It is recommended that you discuss these parameters with your Tivoli Storage Manager server administrator in order to accomplish your backup strategy.

Storage Pool
A single restore can require a full backup, a differential backup, and multiple incremental backups. It is recommended to use collocation if these backups are stored on removable media. Use collocation by file space (define stgpool COLlocate=Filespace) if you plan to restore multiple storage groups in parallel.
This is recommended because all data for any one storage group is stored within one Tivoli Storage Manager server file space.

Data Protection for Exchange node name: Recommended settings
The machine where Data Protection for Exchange is installed must be registered to the Tivoli Storage Manager server with a node name. This node name owns and manages all Data Protection for Exchange data that is backed up to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Specify this node name with the nodename option in the dsm.opt options file located (by default) in the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory. Note that in order to perform VSS operations, you may need to register node names for additional machines. See “Proxy node definitions (VSS Backups)” on page 30 for details about this task.

Be aware of the following Tivoli Storage Manager parameter conditions when registering your Data Protection for Exchange node name (machine) to the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

- **MAXNUMMP** This parameter determines the maximum number of mount points a client node is allowed to use on the Tivoli Storage Manager server during a backup operation.
- **TXNGroupmax** This parameter determines the number of files transferred as a group between the client and server between transaction commit points. This parameter MUST have a value of 12 or greater.
- **COMPression** This parameter determines whether the Data Protection for Exchange node compresses data before sending it to the Tivoli Storage Manager server during a backup operation. Specify COMPression=Client to allow the Data Protection for Exchange node to make the decision whether to compress data via the value of the client COMPression option specified in the options file (dsm.opt) located in the Data Protection for Exchange directory.

**Note:** If you are running Data Protection for Exchange on a Microsoft Cluster Server, it is recommended that the node name match the Exchange virtual server name.
See the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Administrator's Reference for complete information regarding these parameters.
Proxy node definitions (VSS Backups)

Since Data Protection for Exchange VSS Backup operations are implemented through the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client, you must use node names specifically for VSS operations in addition to using a node name for where Data Protection for Exchange is installed. As part of the configuration procedure, a proxy relationship is defined for these various node names. This proxy relationship allows node names to perform operations on behalf of another node name.

There are two types of node names defined in proxy node relationships:

- **Target node**: A node name that controls backup and restore operations and that also owns the data on the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
- **Agent node**: A node name that performs operations on behalf of a target node.

Required node names for basic VSS operations

To perform basic VSS operations, you must have one target node and one agent node:

**Table 6. Required node names for basic VSS operations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proxy node type</th>
<th>Nodename</th>
<th>Where to specify</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Target node</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange node name</td>
<td>Use the <strong>nodename</strong> option in the Data Protection for Exchange options file (dsm.opt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent node</td>
<td>Local DSMAGENT Node</td>
<td>Use the <strong>localdsmanagentnode</strong> parameter in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Target node**

This is the node name where Data Protection for Exchange is installed.

This node name (specified with the **nodename** option in the dsm.opt file) is referred to as the Data Protection for Exchange node name.

**Agent node**

This is the node name where the backup-archive client and VSS provider are installed. This node is responsible for performing the VSS operations as Data Protection for Exchange itself does not perform any direct VSS operations. This node name is referred to as the Local DSMAGENT Node and is specified with the **localdsmanagentnode** parameter in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg by default). You can use the **Configuration** task in the **Edit Menu** of the GUI or the **tdpexc set** command to specify this parameter.

**Note**: The agent node and target node will be on the same machine for basic VSS operations.

Required node names for VSS off-loaded backups

To perform VSS off-loaded backups, you must have one target node and two agent nodes:

**Table 7. Required node names for VSS off-loaded backups**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proxy node type</th>
<th>Nodename</th>
<th>Where to specify</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Target node</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange node name</td>
<td>Use the <strong>nodename</strong> option in the Data Protection for Exchange options file (dsm.opt)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7. Required node names for VSS off-loaded backups (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proxy node type</th>
<th>Nodename</th>
<th>Where to specify</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agent node</td>
<td>Local DSMAGENT Node</td>
<td>Use the localdsmaagentnode parameter in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent node</td>
<td>Remote DSMAGENT Node</td>
<td>Use the remotedsmagentnode parameter in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Target node**

This is the node name where Data Protection for Exchange is installed. This node name (specified with the nodename option in the dsm.opt file) is referred to as the Data Protection for Exchange node name.

**Agent node**

This is the node name where the backup-archive client and VSS provider are installed. This node is responsible for performing the VSS operations as Data Protection for Exchange itself does not perform any direct VSS operations. This node name is referred to as the Local DSMAGENT Node and is specified with the localdsmaagentnode parameter in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg by default). You can use the Configuration task in the Edit Menu of the GUI or the tdpexc set command to specify this parameter.

**Agent node**

The node name of a separate machine that must also have the backup-archive client, VSS provider, and the Exchange System Management Tools installed (make sure you install the same level of the Exchange System Management Tools that is installed on your Exchange production server). This machine is responsible for performing the movement of VSS snapshot data from local shadow volumes to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. It is also responsible for performing the Exchange Integrity Check. This node name is referred to as the Remote DSMAGENT Node and is specified with the remotedsmagentnode parameter in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg by default). You can use the Configuration task in the Edit Menu of the GUI or the tdpexc set command to specify this parameter. The choice of available machines depends on whether the machines have access to the local shadow volumes that contain the VSS snapshot backups. This node name is only valid for VSS environments that support transportable shadow copies. It is not supported if you are using the default VSS system provider. Refer to your VSS provider documentation for details.

Make sure that the localdsmaagentnode and remotedsmagentnode are registered to the same Tivoli Storage Manager server that is specified in the Data Protection for Exchange options file (dsm.opt) and the backup-archive client options file (also dsm.opt).

**Specifying Data Protection for Exchange options**

Once Data Protection for Exchange is registered to Tivoli Storage Manager, several Data Protection for Exchange parameters need to be configured. The Tivoli Storage Manager administrator should have provided you with the node name, password, and the communications method with the appropriate parameters to connect to the
Tivoli Storage Manager server. These values, together with other parameters, are stored in an options file located (by default) in the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory. The default options file name is dsm.opt. To modify the initial dsm.opt file, open dsm.opt using a text editor.

Attention: Make sure that the Data Protection for Exchange options file (dsm.opt) and the backup-archive client options file (also dsm.opt) specify the same Tivoli Storage Manager server.

The options file includes the following parameters, which are required for initial configuration:

**NODename**
The Tivoli Storage Manager node name is the unique name by which Tivoli Storage Manager recognizes the machine running Data Protection for Exchange.

**COMMMethod**
This option specifies the communication protocol to use between the Data Protection for Exchange node with the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Data Protection for Exchange supports the same set of communication protocols supported by other Tivoli Storage Manager clients on Win 32 platforms. Depending on the chosen commmethod, the connectivity parameters for that commmethod need to be specified as well.

The following additional options are not required for initial configuration. By default they are not specified, but you can modify the default settings:

**PASSWORDAccess**
This option instructs the Tivoli Storage Manager API to store the current password (encrypted) in the Windows registry and automatically generates a new one when the current one expires. This method of password management is recommended when running scheduled, unattended backups since it ensures that the backup never fails because of an expired password. The default is prompt.

A utility program named dsmcutil.exe allows you to manage (update or display) the password as stored in the registry. This utility program is distributed with the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client package. For more information on using the dsmcutil program, see the dsmcutil.hlp file or the dsmcutil.txt file which are distributed with the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client package.

**CLUSTERnode**
This option directs the Tivoli Storage Manager API and Data Protection for Exchange to be cluster-aware when running in a MSCS environment. This option must be specified for Data Protection for Exchange to function properly on a MSCS.

**ENABLELANFree**
This option allows Data Protection for Exchange to run in a LAN-free environment (if you are equipped to do so). To perform a LAN-free backup with Data Protection for Exchange, a Tivoli Storage Manager Storage Agent must be installed on the same machine and enablelanfree yes must be specified in the options file. See Managed System for SAN Storage Agent User’s Guide for detailed information about LAN-free environments.

**ENABLECLIENTENCRTKEY**
This option encrypts Exchange databases during backup and restore
processing. One random encryption key is generated per session and is stored on the Tivoli Storage Manager server with the object in the server database. Although Tivoli Storage Manager manages the key, a valid database must be available in order to restore an encrypted object. Specify enableclientencryptkey yes in the options file. In addition, assign the type of encryption to use by specifying the encryptiontype option in this same options file. You can specify DES56 (56-bit) or AES128 (128-bit). The default is 56-bit. In this same file, you must also specify the databases you want encrypted by adding an include statement with the include.encrypt option. Transparent encryption is only available on Tivoli Storage Manager server and API Version 5.3.0 (or later). Note that files that are backed up using encryption CANNOT be restored by an older API.

- For Legacy backups, specify these encryption options in the Data Protection for Exchange options file.
- For VSS Backups, specify these encryption options in the backup-archive client options file. It is recommended that you refer to the encryption information available in the client documentation before attempting to encrypt your storage groups.

Perform the following tasks to encrypt your Exchange database Legacy backups:

1. Verify that you are running version 5.3.0 (or later) of the Tivoli Storage Manager server and Tivoli Storage Manager API.
2. Edit the options file for Data Protection for Exchange and add the following three options:
   a. Add the enableclientencryptkey yes option.
   b. Add the encryptiontype option with the type of encryption to use.
   c. Add your include statements with the include.encrypt option. For example, to encrypt all Exchange data, specify the following:

   include.encrypt */.../*

   To encrypt all the data in Storage Group 1, specify the following:

   include.encrypt "SERVER_NAME\Storage Group 1".../*

**COMPRESSION**

This option instructs the Tivoli Storage Manager API to compress data before sending it to the Tivoli Storage Manager server; this reduces traffic and storage requirements. If you enable compression, it affects performance in two ways:

- CPU utilization is higher on the machine on which Data Protection for Exchange is running,
- Network bandwidth utilization is lower because fewer bytes are sent.
- Storage usage on the Tivoli Storage Manager server is reduced.

You may want to specify compression yes if any of the following conditions exist:

- The network adapter has a data overload.
- Communications between the Data Protection for Exchange and Tivoli Storage Manager server are over a low bandwidth connection.
- There is heavy network traffic.
- You can also use the compressalways yes option (with the compression yes setting) to specify that file compression continues even if the file grows as a result of compression.
It may be better to specify `compression no` in the following cases:

- The computer running Data Protection for Exchange has a CPU overload; the added CPU usage can impact other applications including the Exchange Server. You can monitor CPU and network resource utilization using the Performance Monitor program shipped with Windows.
- You are not constrained by network bandwidth; in this case, you can achieve the best performance by leaving compression NO and enabling hardware compaction on the tape drive, which also reduces storage requirements.

The Tivoli Storage Manager administrator can override the compression option setting for the Data Protection for Exchange node when registering or updating the node by specifying, on the Tivoli Storage Manager server side, that a particular node:

- Always uses compression.
- Never uses compression.
- Leaves the decision up to the client (default value).

**Considerations:**

- For Legacy backups, specify the `compression` option in the Data Protection for Exchange options file.
- For VSS Backups, specify the `compression` option in the backup-archive client options file. It is recommended that you refer to compression information available in the client documentation before attempting to compress your data.

**INCLUDE and EXCLUDE**

**Note:** Only use include and exclude statements to set policy for Legacy backups. Use the VSSPOLICY statement in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file to set policy for VSS backups. See “Specifying Data Protection for Exchange preferences” on page 36 for more information.

A Data Protection for Exchange Legacy backup object name is composed of a series of qualifiers, each either an Exchange name or a Data Protection for Exchange constant, where the qualifiers are separated by a backslash (`\`). The general include and exclude syntax is:

```plaintext
include "objectNameSpecification" [ManagementClassName]
exclude "objectNameSpecification"
```

where `objectNameSpecification` is:

```
ExchangeServerName\ExchangeStorageGroupName\...\backupType
```

where `backupType` is one of the following:

```
full, copy, incr, diff, dbcopy
```

**Note:** Important! The Tivoli Storage Manager API does not allow sending any of the three data types (meta, data, logs) that comprise an Exchange database backup to different storage destinations on the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

This example excludes Storage Group 1 from a backup:

```
EXCLUDE "SERVER1\Storage Group 1\...\*"
```
This example binds all objects for storage group S62 to management class CLASS1:

```
INCLUDE "SERVER1\S62\...\*" CLASS1
```

This example binds all Directory backups to management class CLASS2:

```
INCLUDE "SERVER2\Directory\...\*" CLASS2
```

This example binds all incremental objects to management class CLASS3:

```
INCLUDE "SERVER3\...\incr" CLASS3
```

Consider the following behavior when setting `include` and `exclude` statements:

- The wildcard character (*) matches zero or more characters.
- The wildcard character (?) matches any one character.
- The wildcard character (*) within a qualifier replaces zero or more characters only within that qualifier. The qualifier itself must exist in the matching object name. To match zero or more qualifiers, use ellipses (\...\).
- Incremental object names are always unique. These names contain qualifiers whose values make them unique. Incremental object names are generated at the time of the backup and therefore are not predictable and cannot be specified.
- Include/exclude lists are processed from the bottom up and processing stops at the first match. To ensure that more specific specifications are processed at all, the more general specification should be listed before the more specific ones, so as to be processed after the more specific specifications. Otherwise, the more general specification will match the target before the more specific specifications are seen.
- When a match is found, processing of the list stops and the statement that matches is examined.
  - If it is an `exclude` statement, the matching object name is not backed up.
  - If it is an `include` statement, the matching object name is backed up.

If the `include` statement contains a ManagementClassName, that management class is associated with the object name, for this backup and for all backups of the same name on the current node.

- If a match is not found, the object is backed up using the default management class for the current node.
- If a match is found for an `include` that specifies a management class but the specified management class is not valid for the current node, the default management class for the current node is used.
- Exchange storage group names must be of the correct case, as shown by the displayed results from the `query exchange` or `query tsm`. Data Protection for Exchange constants must be lower case: meta, data, logs. However, at this time the Windows Tivoli Storage Manager API assumes the specifications are for a Windows file system and ignores case. Because they may be honored in the future, the correct case should always be used.

**Notes:**

1. If you are running Data Protection for Exchange on a Microsoft Cluster Server, the options file on both nodes of the cluster must be identical.
2. You can create additional Data Protection for Exchange options files to point to other Tivoli Storage Manager servers. You can also create more
Specifying Data Protection for Exchange preferences

Data Protection for Exchange configuration parameters are defined in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg by default). These configuration parameters determine such preferences as the location of your log file, how date and time stamps display, and the number of buffers to use.

There are four new configuration parameters for this release of Data Protection for Exchange. The following two configuration parameters affect Legacy and VSS Backup processing:

- **BACKUPDESTination**
- **BACKUPMETHOD**

These two configuration parameters affect proxy node set up for VSS Backups:

- **LOCALDSMAgentnode**
- **REMTEDSMAgentnode**

You can set the values of the Data Protection for Exchange configuration parameters in two ways:

- The **Configuration** task in the **Edit Menu** of the Data Protection for Exchange GUI. See “Edit Menu” on page 44.
- The **tdpexc set** command in the Data Protection for Exchange Command Line Interface. See “SET” on page 100.

Note the following characteristics of Data Protection for Exchange configuration parameters:

- The value of a configuration parameter specified on a command line invocation overrides (but does not change) the value of the configuration parameter specified in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file.
- During a command line invocation that does not specify an overriding value for a configuration file parameter, the values in the default Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg) are used.

See “SET” on page 100 for descriptions of available configuration parameters.

Set policy for VSS backups by specifying the VSSPOLICY statement in your Data Protection for Exchange configuration file. Note that you must specify this statement manually. You cannot specify it using the **tdpexc set** command or the **Configuration** task in the **Edit Menu** of the Data Protection for Exchange GUI.

VSSPOLICY statements are processed from the bottom up and processing stops at the first match. To ensure that more specific specifications are processed at all, the more general specification should be listed before the more specific ones, so as to be processed after the more specific specifications. Otherwise, the more general specification will match the target before the more specific specifications are seen.

Specify the following information in the VSSPOLICY statement:

VSSPOLICY <srvname> "<strggrpname>" <backuptype> <backupdest> <mgmtcls>

The statement contains the following values:

- **<srvname>** Name of the Exchange Server or wildcard character: *
- "**<strggrpname>**" Name of storage group or wildcard character: *
- `<backuptype>` Backup type: FULL or COPY or wildcard character: *
- `<backupdest>` Backup destination: TSM or LOCAL or wildcard character: *
- `<mgmtcls>` Management Class name. This sets the management class for the specified class of backup.

Here are examples of the VSSPOLICY statement:

| VSSPOLICY | * | * | FULL | TSM | MC1 |
| VSSPOLICY | * | * | FULL | LOCAL | MC2 |
| VSSPOLICY | * | * | COPY | TSM | MC3 |
| VSSPOLICY | * | * | COPY | LOCAL | MC4 |
| VSSPOLICY | * | * | *Payroll* | TSM | MC5 |
| VSSPOLICY | * | First Storage Group* | * | LOCAL | MC6 |
| VSSPOLICY SERVER1 | * | * | TSM | MC7 |
| VSSPOLICY SERVER1 | * | | LOCAL | MC8 |

**Part II: Configuration procedure**

This section provides step-by-step instructions on how to configure the required applications to perform Data Protection for Exchange backup and restore operations. Configuration tasks are presented in sequential order based on the location of where the tasks must be performed:

1. On the Tivoli Storage Manager server
2. On the machine running the Exchange Server
3. On the machine running the off-loaded backups (VSS only)

Be aware that for each step, there are tasks that are only to be performed for VSS operations. These steps are clearly identified by the text: VSS only.

**1. On the Tivoli Storage Manager server:**

Perform these steps on the Tivoli Storage Manager server:

**Step 1.** Define the policy domains, policy sets, management classes, copy groups, and storage pools needed to meet your Data Protection for Exchange backup and restore requirements.

_for additional information:_

How Tivoli Storage Manager server policy affects Data Protection for Exchange

Recommended Tivoli Storage Manager policy settings For VSS operations, Tivoli Storage Manager server authentication must be on.

**Step 2.** Register your Data Protection for Exchange node name and password with the Tivoli Storage Manager register node command. For example:

```
register node <DP> <DPpassword>
```

For VSS operations, this node is the Target Node.

_for additional information:_

Data Protection for Exchange node name: Recommended settings

**Step 3.** If not already defined, register your Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client node name and password for the machine where the Exchange Server installed. For example:

```
register node <BAnodename> <BApassword>
```

For VSS operations, this agent node is the Local DSMAGENT Node.
For additional information:
Proxy node definitions (VSS Backups)

__Step 4. (VSS only) If you plan to perform off-loaded backups, register the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client node name and password for the machine that will perform the VSS off-loaded backups. For example:

register node <BAOFF> <BAOFFpassword>

This agent node is the Remote DSMAGENT Node. Note that BAOFF is used in this example (and in Step 5) to differentiate between this Remote DSMAGENT Node and the Local DSMAGENT Node (Step 3). You can replace BAOFF with the node name of your backup-archive client. If you do not plan to perform off-loaded backups, you can skip this step.

For additional information:
Proxy node definitions (VSS Backups)

__Step 5. (VSS only) Define the proxy node relationship (for the Target Node and agent nodes) with the Tivoli Storage Manager grant proxynode command. For example:

grant proxynode target=DP agent=BAnodename,BAOFF

For additional information:
Proxy node definitions (VSS Backups)

2. On the machine running the Exchange Server:
Perform these steps on the machine where the Exchange Server is installed and running:

__Step 1. Specify your Data Protection for Exchange node name and communication method in the dsm.opt file located (by default) in the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory. Additional options are also available.

For additional information:
Specifying Data Protection for Exchange options

__Step 2. Specify your Data Protection for Exchange preferences (such as language, date format, log file, etc.) in the tdpexc.cfg file located (by default) in the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory. Use the set command or the Configuration task in the Edit Menu of the Data Protection for Exchange GUI.

For additional information:
Specifying Data Protection for Exchange preferences
Set command Positional Parameters


For additional information:
Specifying Data Protection for Exchange preferences
Set command Positional Parameters

__Step 4. (VSS Only): Configure the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client (if it is not already configured). If the backup-archive client is
already configured, you can use existing client services. The backup-archive client Setup Wizard can guide you through the configuration process (if needed). In the backup-archive client GUI menu, select Utilities->Setup Wizard->Help me configure the TSM Backup Archive Client. Note that the node name for this machine is referred to as the Local DSMAGENT Node and is specified with the localdsmagentnode parameter in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg by default).

For additional information:

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Backup-Archive Client
Installation and User’s Guide
“Proxy node definitions (VSS Backups)” on page 30

Step 5. (VSS Only): Install and configure the Tivoli Storage Manager Client Acceptor Daemon (CAD) Service (if not already installed and configured). You can use an existing client CAD Service if one is already installed and configured. The backup-archive client Setup Wizard can guide you through the CAD installation process (if needed). In the backup-archive client GUI menu, select Utilities->Setup Wizard->Help me configure the TSM Web Client. Make sure this CAD service is running before proceeding to Step 6.

Step 6. (VSS Only): Install and configure the Tivoli Storage Manager Remote Client Agent Service (DSMAGENT) if it is not already installed and configured. The backup-archive client Setup Wizard can guide you through the configuration process. In the backup-archive client GUI menu, select Utilities->Setup Wizard->Help me configure the TSM Web Client. You can use the existing DSMAGENT if one is already installed and configured.

Step 7. (VSS Only): Install the Tivoli Storage Manager Copy Services Exchange VSS Integration Module from the product (if it is not already installed).

Step 8. (VSS Only): If you plan to perform VSS Instant Restores, install the Tivoli Storage Manager Copy Services Hardware Devices Snapshot Integration Module from the product (if it is not already installed). Note that SAN Volume Controller is also required to perform VSS Instant Restores.

Step 9. (VSS Only): Add the Microsoft Exchange Server binary path to the PATH statement in the system environment variables. For example: 
"C:\Program files\Exchsrvr\bin"

Verify that the "ESEUTIL.EXE" executable exists in this directory.

Step 10. (VSS Only): Install and configure a VSS provider. Consult the VSS provider documentation for information regarding configuration of that software. Note that there is no installation or configuration required if you are using the default Windows VSS System Provider.

Step 11. (VSS Only): Define storage space to hold VSS Backups that will reside on local shadow volumes. Make sure you define enough space to hold all copies of the VSS Backups as designated by your policies. See “Back up to Tivoli Storage Manager storage versus back up to local shadow volumes” on page 26 for recommendations regarding sufficient disk storage space.
3. On the machine running the Off-loaded backups (VSS only):

Perform these steps on the machine running the off-loaded backups:

__Step 1. Configure the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client (if it is not already configured). If the backup-archive client is already configured, you can use existing client services. The backup-archive client Setup Wizard can guide you through the configuration process (if needed). In the backup-archive client GUI menu, select Utilities->Setup Wizard->Help me configure the TSM Backup Archive Client. Note that the node name for this machine is referred to as the Remote DSMAGENT Node and is specified with the remotedsmagentnode parameter in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg by default).

For additional information:
IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Backup-Archive Client Installation and User's Guide

__Step 2. Install and configure the Tivoli Storage Manager Client Acceptor Daemon (CAD) Service (if not already installed and configured). You can use an existing client CAD Service if one is already installed and configured. The backup-archive client Setup Wizard can guide you through the CAD installation process (if needed). In the backup-archive client GUI menu, select Utilities->Setup Wizard->Help me configure the TSM Web Client.

__Step 3. Install and configure the Tivoli Storage Manager Remote Client Agent Service (DSMAGENT). The backup-archive client Setup Wizard can guide you through the configuration process. In the backup-archive client GUI menu, select Utilities->Setup Wizard->Help me configure the TSM Web Client.

__Step 4. Install the Microsoft Exchange Server management tools from the Microsoft Exchange Server installation media. Take note of the Microsoft Exchange Server Management tools binary directory (for example: C:\Program files\Exchsrvr\bin). Verify that the "ESEUTIL.EXE" executable exists in this directory. Data Protection for Exchange uses this tool to run automatic integrity checking of the VSS backup.

Notes:

a. The Exchange Server does not need to be installed or running on this machine. Only the Microsoft Exchange Server management tools are required to be installed on this machine.

b. See your Microsoft Exchange Server documentation for necessary license requirements.

__Step 5. Add the Microsoft Exchange Server binary path to the PATH statement in the system environment variables. For example:
"C:\Program files\Exchsrvr\bin"

__Step 6. Install and configure a VSS provider (if you are not using the default system VSS provider). Consult the VSS provider documentation for information regarding configuration of that software.
Part III: Verify your configuration

Before attempting to perform a backup or restore operation, verify that Data Protection for Exchange is installed and configured correctly by running the `query exchange` command on the machine where the Exchange Server is installed and running. For example:

tdpexcc query exchange

This command returns information and status about the Exchange Server, storage groups, circular logging, and VSS components (when configured for VSS operations). The following output example shows that the configuration is correct and ready for Legacy backups, VSS Backups (Local DSMAgent Node), and VSS Off loaded backups (Remote DSMAgent Node):

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

ACN5057I The C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPExchange\tdpexc.log log file has been pruned successfully.

Microsoft Exchange Server Information
----------------------------------------

Server Name: ONY
Domain Name: optimus.zor.local
Exchange Server Version: 6.5.7638.1

Storage Groups with Databases and Status
----------------------------------------

First Storage Group
Circular Logging - Disabled
 forfun store Online
 Mailbox Store (ONY) Online
 Public Folder Store (ONY) Online

stg3
Circular Logging - Disabled
 mail1 Online
 mail12 Online
 mail13 Online

stg_big
Circular Logging - Disabled
 mail1 Online
 mail12 Online
 mail13 Online
 mail14 Online

test
Circular Logging - Disabled
test1 Online

Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS) Information
---------------------------------------------

Writer Name : Microsoft Exchange Writer
Local DSMAgent Node : svc_ba
Remote DSMAgent Node : svc_offload
Writer Status : Online
Selectable Components : 4
Note that the following two errors are commonly returned when performing a VSS operation. Information is provided to help locate the cause of the error.

**ANS1017E (RC-50) Session rejected: TCP/IP connection failure**
This is displayed when the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client CAD is either not running or is not configured properly.

**ANS1532E (RC5722) Proxy Rejected: Proxy authority has not been granted to this node.** This is displayed when the Tivoli Storage Manager server has not been configured for the proxy nodes correctly.
Chapter 4. Using the Graphical User Interface (GUI)

This section provides information on how to use the Data Protection for Exchange GUI to perform the following:

- Perform a Legacy backup of Exchange storage groups and transaction logs, including Exchange Site Replication Service (SRS) and Exchange Key Management Service (KMS) databases.
- Perform a VSS Backup of Exchange storage groups and transaction logs.
- Perform a VSS Off-loaded backup of Exchange storage groups and transaction logs.
- Restore Exchange storage groups and transaction logs.
- Restore the SRS database.
- Restore the KMS database.
- Modify the Data Protection for Exchange configuration.
- Select short cuts from the Data Protection for Exchange Toolbar.

Note: The term Tree View refers to the directory tree view in the left frame of a backup or restore window. The term List View refers to the scrollable list of objects in the right frame of a backup or restore window.

GUI overview

The Data Protection for Exchange GUI consists of a main window with the following:

- Common menu bar
- Toolbar
- Backup window
- Restore window

Each of the backup and restore windows contain a directory tree and operation controls.

Menu bar

The Data Protection for Exchange GUI Menu Bar consists of the following items and menu list functions:

File
Exit the program.

Edit
Configure Data Protection for Exchange. The default configuration settings are contained in the tdpexc.cfg file.

View
Refresh the Tree View.

Utilities
Change the Tivoli Storage Manager password or display Tivoli Storage Manager server information.

Help
Obtain Data Protection for Exchange help, view online books, Tivoli Storage Manager Web access, and information about Data Protection for Exchange.
Edit Menu

Configuration
This allows you to modify the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file. If a configuration file is not specified, the \texttt{tdpexc.cfg} file is used. If no configuration file is found, a default file is created which contains all the default settings for the parameters. A different configuration file can be specified by invoking the GUI from the command line with the \texttt{/configfile} parameter.

Clicking this menu item displays the Data Protection for Exchange Settings dialog with the following five tabs and their settings:

- **General Tab**

  \textit{Temporary Log Restore Path}
  Enter the default temporary path to use when restoring logs and patch files. For best performance, the path specified should be on a different physical device than the current active logger. If you choose to not enter a path, the default is the value of the TEMP environment variable. When performing full, copy, or database copy restores, all log files residing in the specified path are erased.

  \textbf{Note:} Do not specify double-byte characters (DBCS) within the temporary log path. This is not supported by Data Protection for Exchange or Microsoft.

  \textit{Wait for Tape Mounts for Backup or Restore}
  Check this box when you want Data Protection for Exchange to wait for tape media to be mounted for backup and restore operations. This setting is applicable when the Tivoli Storage Manager server is configured to store the backup data on tape media. With backup data on removable media it is likely that during backup and restore operations a wait period will occur during storage volume mounts. If a wait occurs this setting specifies whether Data Protection for Exchange should wait for the media mount or stop the current operation. Wait for tape mounts is the default.

  \textit{Use VSS Backup as the default Backup method}
  Check this box to set VSS Backups as the default backup method. Be aware of the following considerations when using this parameter:
  - Make sure the \textit{Local DSMAGENT Node name} parameter is specified.
  - VSS Backups can only be restored using VSS.
  - You cannot mix a VSS Backup with a Legacy backup.
  - This parameter is unavailable if the Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module is not installed.

  The default value is to use the Legacy backup method.

- **Performance Tab** (Applies to legacy backups only)

  \textit{TDP Buffers (default value: 3)}
  Select a number (2 to 8) that specifies the number of communication data buffers Data Protection for Exchange uses when transferring data between Data Protection for Exchange and the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Each buffer is the size
specified in the *TDP Buffer Size* parameter. Note that this parameter applies to Legacy backups only.

**TDP Buffer Size (default value: 1024)**
Select a number (64 to 8192) that specifies the size of the buffers used by Data Protection for Exchange to transfer data to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Note that this parameter applies to Legacy backups only.

- **Logging Tab**
  
  **Log File Name (default value: tdpexc.log)**
  Enter the name of the file into which you want Data Protection for Exchange to write activity log information.

  **Prune Old Entries (default value: selected)**
  Check this box to enable pruning of the activity log. Specify the number of days (0 to 9999) to keep old entries. Data Protection for Exchange prunes entries greater than this number when you initialize this application. The default value is to keep the entries for 60 days. Click on the Prune Now button to prune the activity log immediately.

- **Regional Tab**
  
  **Language (default value: American English)**
  Specify the language to use for displaying the GUI and Data Protection for Exchange messages. The following languages are available during installation:
  - English (United States) (This is the default).
  - Brazilian Portuguese
  - Chinese (Simplified)
  - Chinese (Traditional)
  - French
  - German
  - Italian
  - Japanese
  - Korean
  - Spanish
  The language you specify does not become effective until you exit and restart the GUI.

  **Date Format (default value: mm/dd/yyyy)**
  Specify the date format of your choice.
  - **dd** Day of the Month
  - **mm** Month of the Year
  - **yyyy** Year

  **Time Format (default value: hh:mm:ss)**
  Specify the format for displaying time.
  - **hh** Hours (24-hour day)
  - **mm** Minutes in an hour
  - **ss** Seconds in a minute
**Number Format** *(default value: xxx,xxx.dd)*

Specify the format for displaying numbers. The choices on the display represent several ways to place the decimal, comma, and spaces.

- **VSS Backup Tab**

  **Default Backup Destination** *(default value: TSM Server)*

  Select the default storage location for your backups. You can select from the following storage locations:

  - **TSM Server**
    - The data is stored on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage only. This is the default.
  - **Local**
    - The backup is stored on local shadow volumes only.
  - **Both**
    - The backup is stored on both Tivoli Storage Manager server storage and local shadow volumes. Note that if this parameter is selected, the Tivoli Storage Manager server backup cannot be off-loaded.

  Note that this parameter is only valid when using the VSS backup method.

**Local DSMAGENT Node name**

Specify the Tivoli Storage Manager node name (agent node) of the local client machine that performs VSS operations and moves the VSS data from local shadow volumes to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage during Tivoli Storage Manager server backups. This parameter must be specified for VSS operations to be performed.

**Remote DSMAGENT Node name**

Specify the Tivoli Storage Manager node name (agent node) of the remote client machine that moves the VSS data from local shadow volumes to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage during off-loaded backups.

For specific considerations related to these configuration settings, see “SET” on page 100.

**View Menu**

**Refresh tree view**

When the tree is refreshed, the GUI will:

- clear all selections
- clear all List View information for all Storage Groups
- rebuild the directory tree
- completely expand the directory tree

If you simply move back and forth between the Backup and Restore tabs without refreshing, you do not lose the current selections or Tree View. If you switch from the Restore tab to the Backup tab, perform a new backup, then switch back to the Restore tab, you must refresh the Restore directory tree to see the new backup.

**Show only Active objects**

Select this option to display only active backup objects in the List View.

This is the default value.
Show all objects
Select this option to display both active and inactive objects in the List View.

Auto Select
Select this option to quickly select the backup objects to restore. When Auto Select is off, you must click on all objects to be restored. When Auto Select is on (the default value), additional selections are automatically made as you click.

The following is characteristic of Auto Select:
• Operates when you click on a full, differential, or incremental backup in the List View. Auto Select also operates when you click on a storage group or server name in the Tree View.
• Ignores copy and database copy backups.
• If you click on a full backup, the latest associated differential or all associated incremental backups are selected.
• If you click on a differential backup, the associated full backup is also selected.
• If you click on an incremental backup, the associated full backup and all associated earlier incremental backups are also selected.
• Operates when you deselect a full, differential, incremental, storage group, or server name.

Auto Select will not make additional selections in the following two situations:
• If a combination of differential and incremental backups exist for a full backup. for example, if you clicked on a full backup that had associated incremental and differential backups, only the full backup is selected.
• If a differential or incremental backup is selected and no associated full backup can be found.

To override the characteristics of Auto Select, deselect the Auto Select option and manually select what you need.

Utilities Menu
Change TSM Password
This dialog prompts you to enter the old password, then enter the new password twice, in order to verify the new password. See “CHANGETSMPASSWORD” on page 97 for additional information.

TSM Server Information
This window displays the following Tivoli Storage Manager server connection information:
• Nodename
• Server Network Host Name
• Tivoli Storage Manager API Version
• Server Name
• Server Type
• Server Version
• Compression Mode
• Domain Name
• Active Policy Set
• Default Management Class
Help Menu

**Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server**
Launches Data Protection for Exchange online help.

**Books Online**
Launches the *Data Protection for Exchange Installation and User’s Guide.*

**TSM Web Access**
Launches an online help panel that contains links to IBM, Tivoli Storage Manager, and Exchange Server Web site links.

**About Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server**
Launches a splash screen that contains product release information.

**Toolbar**
The Toolbar provides short cuts to frequently used tasks such as:
- Refresh the Tree View
- Edit Data Protection for Exchange configuration
- Display IBM, Tivoli Storage Manager, and Exchange Server Web site links
- Display the *Data Protection for Exchange Installation and User’s Guide*

**GUI Invocation**
The following parameters can be entered when the GUI is launched from the command line interface:

`/configfile`
Specify this parameter to override the default Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg).

For example, to specify the configuration file, file.cfg, located in the \temp\test directory during the GUI invocation, you would enter the following command in the Data Protection for Exchange command line interface:

```plaintext
tdpexc /CONFIGfile=c:\temp\test\file.cfg
```

`/excserver`
Specify this parameter to override the default Exchange server. The default Exchange server is the local Exchange server. IMPORTANT! If you are running Data Protection for Exchange in an MSCS, you MUST invoke the GUI with the `/excserver` parameter from the Data Protection for Exchange command line.

For example, to specify the Exchange server `exc1` during the GUI invocation, you would enter the following command in the Data Protection for Exchange command line interface:

```plaintext
tdpexc /EXCSERVER=exc1
```

`/tsmoptfile`
Specify this parameter to override the default Tivoli Storage Manager option file (dsm.opt).

For example, to specify the file.opt option file located in the \temp\test directory during the GUI invocation, you would enter the following command in the Data Protection for Exchange command line interface:

```plaintext
tdpexc /TSMOPTFile=c:\temp\test\file.opt
```
Backup and Restore Window

Data Protection for Exchange provides separate windows for backup and restore operations. Each window contains its own directory tree, list, and tab controls.

Considerations

- Both Legacy and VSS operations are performed from the same tab.
- The backup window is the initial window visible upon startup of the GUI.
- You cannot close, minimize, or move the backup or restore window independently of the main GUI window.
- Note that a VSS related feature is greyed out when the Exchange VSS Integration Module is not installed.

Highlighting and Selecting

- When an item is highlighted in the Tree, information about all the items one level under the highlighted item is displayed in the List View. For example, if a Storage Group is highlighted in the Restore Tree, all Tivoli Storage Manager backups for that Storage Group are displayed in the List View.
- The following list contains exception
  - If the Site, Organization, or Domain name is highlighted in the Backup Tree, information about the Site, Organization, or Domain, Exchange server, and version level are displayed in the List View.
  - If the Information Store item is highlighted in the Backup Tree, the List View displays status for all Storage Groups.
  - If the server name is highlighted in the Restore Tree, the List View displays all Storage Groups and their backups (indented under the Storage Group).
- Highlighting the List View has no effect.
- To select an item for backup or restore, click on the square selection box to the left of the item name. Clicking on a selection box in the Tree will also highlight that item, displaying associated information in the List View.
- Double-clicking on a selection box in the Tree will select that item and collapse or expand the Tree at that point. An item can be selected from both the Tree and the List View.
- If a selection box contains an "X", the selection is disabled for that item. You may still be able to backup or restore the item. For example, if a Storage Group item has a disabled selection box in the Tree and all the List View items also have disabled selection boxes, then those items cannot be selected for backup or restore. This can happen only if you have an empty Tivoli Storage Manager server file space. See the restore option Auto Select for additional information on selecting items in the Tree and List View.

Note that some selectable items, such as inactive Tivoli Storage Manager Backups, can only be selected in the List View.

Messages

Please be aware of the following IMPORTANT messages when performing backup or restore operations:

- Selecting multiple Copy, Full, or Database Copy backups, or any combination of these backups, for restore, a warning message will ask you if you want to continue. If you continue, all backups will be restored but only the latest backup will take affect. All the time spent restoring the earlier backups will be wasted.
- When you request a backup to be restored, Data Protection for Exchange will first check to make sure any databases have been dismounted. If they have not,
you will be prompted to stop them or cancel the restore. After a restore, you can check the *Mount Databases After Restore* option, or mount them from outside Data Protection for Exchange.

**GUI Tasks**

**How to perform a Legacy Backup**

This procedure assumes that Data Protection for Exchange and the Tivoli Storage Manager server are properly configured in your environment. See Chapter 3, “Configuring Data Protection for Exchange,” on page 25 for detailed instructions on how to configure these applications. You must have local registry rights (for all versions of Exchange Server) to perform a Data Protection for Exchange backup.

Follow these steps to perform a Legacy backup of your data:

1. Start the Data Protection for Exchange GUI. If you are running Data Protection for Exchange in a MSCS:
   
   **Notes:**
   
   a. If you are backing up the Site Replication Service (SRS), you must initialize the SRS database through the cluster administrator. The SRS must be running in order to be backed up.
   
   b. You MUST invoke the GUI with the `/excserver` parameter from the Data Protection for Exchange command line.

   Note that if you are backing up the Key Management Service (KMS), the KMS must be running in order to be backed up.

2. From the Tree View, select one or more storage groups to back up. You can also select one or more storage groups to back up in the List View. Note that you cannot back up more than one application (SRS, KMS, IS) in a single operation.

3. In the Backup Options section of the Backup window, select the *Legacy Backup* method.

4. Specify the type of backup to perform with the *Backup Type* drop-down menu. Note that you cannot perform a database copy of an SRS or KMS database.

5. Click on the *Backup* button to begin the backup operation.

**How to perform a VSS Backup**

This procedure assumes that Data Protection for Exchange, the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client, the Tivoli Storage Manager server, the Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module, and a VSS or VDS provider are properly configured in your environment. See Chapter 3, “Configuring Data Protection for Exchange,” on page 25 for detailed instructions on how to configure these applications. You must have local registry rights (for all versions of Exchange Server) to perform a Data Protection for Exchange backup.

Follow these steps to perform a VSS Backup of your data:

1. Start the Data Protection for Exchange GUI. If you are running Data Protection for Exchange in a MSCS, you MUST invoke the GUI with the `/excserver` parameter from the Data Protection for Exchange command line.

2. Make sure a *Local DSMAGENT Node name* is specified. You can specify this node name using the Data Protection for Exchange Settings window. From the File Menu, click on *Edit -> Configuration -> VSS Backup Tab.*

3. From the Tree View, select one or more storage groups to back up. You can also select one or more storage groups to back up in the List View.
4. In the Backup Options section of the Backup window, select the **VSS Backup** method. Note that this method will automatically be selected when the **Use VSS as the default Backup method** parameter is selected in the Data Protection for Exchange Settings window. If the Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module is not installed, the **VSS Backup** method is not available.

5. Specify the storage destination of your backup with the **Backup Destination** drop-down menu.

6. Specify the type of backup to perform with the **Backup Type** drop-down menu. Note that you can only perform a full, copy, or copy without integrity check backup with the VSS Backup method.

7. Click on the **Backup** button to begin the backup operation.

### How to perform a VSS Off-loaded Backup

An off-loaded backup uses an alternate machine (specified with the **Remote DSMAGENT Node** parameter) to move Exchange data to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. This may help reduce network, I/O, and CPU resources associated with the production machine from being impacted during backup processing. It also uses the alternate machine to perform the Exchange Integrity Check.

This procedure assumes that Data Protection for Exchange, the Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client, the Tivoli Storage Manager server, the Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module, and a VSS or VDS provider are properly configured in your environment. See Chapter 3, “Configuring Data Protection for Exchange,” on page 25 for detailed instructions on how to configure these applications. You must have local registry rights (for all versions of Exchange Server) to perform a Data Protection for Exchange backup.

Follow these steps to perform a VSS off-loaded backup of your data:

1. Start the Data Protection for Exchange GUI. If you are running Data Protection for Exchange in a MSCS, you MUST invoke the GUI with the **lexserver** parameter from the Data Protection for Exchange command line.

2. Make sure a **Local DSMAGENT Node name** is specified. You can specify this node name using the Data Protection for Exchange Settings window. From the File Menu, click on **Edit -> Configuration -> VSS Backup Tab**.

3. Make sure a **Remote DSMAGENT Node name** is specified. You can specify this node name using the Data Protection for Exchange Settings window. From the File Menu, click on **Edit -> Configuration -> VSS Backup Tab**.

4. From the Tree View, select one or more storage groups to back up. You can also select one or more storage groups to back up in the List View.

5. In the Backup Options section of the Backup window, select the **VSS Backup** method. Note that this method will automatically be selected when the **Use VSS as the default Backup method** option is selected in the Data Protection for Exchange Settings window. If the Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module is not installed, the VSS Backup method is not available.

6. In the **Backup Destination** drop-down menu, select **TSM Server (Offloaded)**.

7. Specify the type of backup to perform with the **Backup Type** drop-down menu. Note that you can only perform a full, copy, or copy without integrity check backup with the VSS off-loaded backup method.

8. Click on the **Backup** button to begin the backup operation.
Restoring Exchange storage groups

Note: You must have local registry rights (for all versions of Exchange Server) to perform a Data Protection for Exchange restore.

When you restore a storage group, be aware that data which exists in the storage group is overwritten and is no longer available after the restore is complete.

Perform the following steps to restore an Exchange server storage group:

1. Start the Data Protection for Exchange GUI.
2. Click on the Restore tab.
3. From the Tree View, select the Exchange server storage group to restore. To restore a particular database, first highlight the storage group in the Tree View. Then select the database to be restored in the List View. To restore all available storage groups, highlight the Exchange server in the Tree View.
   The List View displays the following information about your backups:
   • Backup Method (Legacy or VSS)
   • Type (Full, Incremental, Differential, Copy, Database Copy)
   • Backup Location (TSM Server or VSS Device)
   • Management Class (The Tivoli Storage Manager server management class to which the backup belongs.)
4. Select the appropriate restore options in the Restore Options section. See “Restore options” on page 53 for details.
5. Click on the Restore button to begin the restore operation.

Note: When performing a restore of mailbox databases with Exchange Server 2003, if a Recovery Storage Group exists, mailbox databases will be restored to the Recovery Storage Group instead of to the original storage group. Also, when restoring a mailbox database to a Recovery Storage Group, you must specify the Replay Restored Logs ONLY option in the GUI Restore Window or the restore operation may fail. This note ONLY applies to Legacy restores. VSS Restores to the Recovery Storage Group are NOT supported by Microsoft.

VSS restore considerations
Be aware of the following considerations when performing VSS restores. Unless otherwise specified, "VSS restores" refers to all restore types that use VSS (VSS Restore, VSS Fast Restore, VSS Instant Restore):

• VSS restores ignore the Recovery Storage Group and are placed directly into the production database.
• The VSS Backups to be restored must be from the same snapshot (i.e. contain the same timestamp). VSS Backups that contain different timestamps must be restored one at a time and cannot be restored together in a single operation.
• A VSS Instant Restore overwrites the entire contents of the source volumes. However, you can avoid overwriting the source volumes by selecting the Disable VSS Instant Restore option. This option bypasses volume-level copy and uses file-level copy instead to restore the files from a VSS Backup that resides on local shadow volumes.
• Unlike Legacy restores (which only dismount the database being restored), VSS restores dismount all databases in the storage group that is being restored. This is a Microsoft requirement.
- If a hardware provider is used, the disks that contain Exchange data must be configured as basic.
- Be aware that when a VSS restore from local shadow volumes is performed, the bytes transferred will display "0". That is because no data ("0") is restored from the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

**Restoring the Site Replication Service (SRS)**

When you restore an SRS database, be aware that data which exists in the SRS database is overwritten and is no longer available after the restore is complete.

Perform the following steps to restore an SRS database:
1. Stop the SRS service.
2. Rename the SRSDATA folder (located in the Exchange folder path) to a name of your choice.
3. Start the SRS service.
4. Start the Data Protection for Exchange GUI.
5. Click on the **Restore** tab.
6. From the Tree View, select the SRS database for restore. You cannot restore more than one application (SRS, KMS, IS) in a single operation.
7. Select the appropriate restore options.
8. Click on the **Restore** button to begin the restore operation.

**Restoring the Key Management Service (KMS)**

When you restore a KMS database, be aware that data which exists in the KMS database is overwritten and is no longer available after the restore is complete.

Perform the following steps to restore a KMS database:
1. Start the Data Protection for Exchange GUI.
2. Click on the **Restore** tab.
3. From the Tree View, select the KMS database for restore. You cannot restore more than one application (KMS, SRS, IS) in a single operation.
4. Select the appropriate restore options.
5. Click on the **Restore** button to begin the restore operation.

**Restore options**

*Run Recovery*

Select this option to specify whether to replay just the restored logs or to replay both the restored and current logs. When recovery is not run, the databases are not online. As a result, recovery must be run for Legacy restores by either another restore operation (with **Run Recovery** specified) or manually using the ESEUTIL utility.

- Select **Replay Restored AND Current Logs** to replay any transaction log entries appearing in the current active transaction log. This includes both current and restored logs. This is the default value. Note that this option is not supported for VSS Instant Restore.
- Select **Replay Restored Logs ONLY** to replay any transactions appearing in the restored transaction logs. IMPORTANT: After performing this type of restore, it is highly recommended that you perform a new full backup.
Note: When performing a restore of a mailbox database with Exchange Server 2003, if a Recovery Storage Group exists, the mailbox database will be restored to the Recovery Storage Group. You must specify the Replay Restored Logs ONLY option when restoring a mailbox database to a Recovery Storage Group or the restore operation may fail. This note ONLY applies to Legacy restores. VSS Restores to the Recovery Storage Group are NOT supported by Microsoft.

Mount Databases After Restore
Select this option to automatically mount databases within the storage group after the recovery completes. With Exchange Server 2003, if the Legacy restore operation is a mailbox restore to the Recovery Storage Group, the database mounted is the database in the Recovery Storage Group, not the database in the original storage group.

Disable VSS Instant Restore
Select this option to bypass volume-level copy and instead use file-level copy to restore the files from a VSS Backup that resides on local shadow volumes. Bypassing volume-level copy means that Exchange database files, log files, and the checkpoint file are the only data overwitten on the source volumes. This can result in a longer restore processing time. If this option is not selected, volume level snapshot restore is used for these VSS Backup if the backup exists on volumes that support it. The default value is to use volume level snapshot restore if supported.

Data Protection for Exchange in a MSCS environment
Consider the following information when running Data Protection for Exchange in a MSCS environment:

- The GUI MUST be invoked from the command line with the /excserv parameter. For example, if the Exchange virtual server name on the Microsoft Cluster is exc1, the command line entry (GUI invocation) is
  tdpexc /excserv=exc1
- The Start menu shortcut for the Data Protection for Exchange GUI application MUST be modified. Modify the Start menu shortcut for the Data Protection for Exchange GUI application by performing the following steps:
  1. Right-mouse click on the Data Protection for Exchange GUI icon.
  2. Select Properties.
  3. Select Shortcut.
  4. Enter the following text in the Target window:
     "C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPEXchange\tdpexc.exe /excserv=exc1"

where Data Protection for Exchange is installed in the default installation directory and the Exchange virtual server name is exc1.
Chapter 5. Using the Command Line Interface

This chapter describes how to use the Data Protection for Exchange command line interface. Each command includes a syntax diagram and a description. See “Reading syntax diagrams” on page xiii for more information.

The next section is an overview of the command line interface. The commands are described in the following categories:

- Query
- Backup
- Restore
- Changetsmpassword
- Set
- Help

The Data Protection for Exchange command line interface can also be used when scheduling automatic backups of Exchange databases. See Appendix A, “Using the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler,” on page 115 for a discussion of using the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler with Data Protection for Exchange.
Overview

The name of the Data Protection for Exchange command line interface is **tdpexcc.exe**. This program is located in the directory where Data Protection for Exchange is installed.

The command line parameters have the following characteristics:

- positional parameters do not include a leading slash (/) or dash (-)
- optional parameters can appear in any order after the required parameters
- optional parameters begin with a forward slash (/) or a dash (-)
- minimum abbreviations for keywords are indicated in upper case text
- some keyword parameters require a value
- for those keyword parameters that require a value, the value is separated from the keyword with an equal sign (=)
- if a parameter requires more than one value after the equal sign, the values are separated with commas
- each parameter is separated from the others by using spaces
- if a parameter’s value includes spaces, the value must be enclosed in double quotes
- a positional parameter can appear only once per command invocation

Issue the `tdpexcc ?` or `tdpexcc help` command to display help for the command line interface.
Query Commands

There are three basic query commands: one command for the Exchange Server, one command to view Data Protection for Exchange configuration information, and one command for the Tivoli Storage Manager server. The query commands allow you to:

- Query the status of the local Exchange Server
- Query a list of Data Protection for Exchange configuration information
- Query a list of Exchange backups in Tivoli Storage Manager storage and Tivoli Storage Manager server connection information

QUERY EXCHANGE

Use this command to query the local Exchange Server for general information.

The query exchange command returns the following information:

- Version and level of the Exchange Server
- Domain and Server Names
- Storage groups and all database names with status of each
- Exchange Server 2003 Recovery Storage Group status
- Whether the storage group has circular logging enabled
- VSS Information (only applicable when configured for VSS operations)

Syntax

```
TDPEXCC—Query EXChange

/CONFIGfile= configfilename
/EXCSERVER= server-name
/LOGFile= logfilename
/LOGPrune= numdays
```

Optional Parameters

/CONFIGfile= configfilename

Use the /configfile parameter to specify the name of the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file that contains the values for the Data Protection for Exchange configuration options. See “SET” on page 100 for details about the contents of the file.

The configfilename variable can include a fully qualified path. If the configfilename variable does not include a path, the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory is used.

Considerations

- If the configfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /configfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example: /CONFIGfile="c:\Program Files\file.cfg"
- If the /configfile parameter is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.
• If the /configfile parameter is specified but the configfilename variable is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.

/EXCSERVER=server-name
Use the /exceserver parameter to specify the name of the Exchange Server to query.

The server-name variable specifies the name of the Exchange Server to query.

Considerations
• If the Exchange Server to query is a member of a Microsoft Cluster Server, this parameter must be specified and should be set to the name of the Exchange virtual server.
• The default value is the local Exchange Server.

/LOGFile=logfile
Use the /logfile parameter to specify the name of the activity log file generated by Data Protection for Exchange.

The logfile variable identifies the name of the activity log file.

If the specified log file does not exist, a new log file is created. If the specified log file exists, new log entries are appended to the file. The logfile variable can include a fully-qualified path. However, if no path is specified, the log file is written to the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory.

If the logfile variable includes spaces, the entire /logfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:
/LOGFile="c:\Program Files\mytdpexchange.log"

If the /logfile parameter is not specified, log records are written to the default log file, tdpexc.log.

The /logfile parameter cannot be turned off. You always get logging.

When using multiple simultaneous instances of Data Protection for Exchange to perform operations, use the /logfile parameter to specify a different log file for each instance used. This directs logging for each instance to a different log file and prevents interspersed log file records. Failure to specify a different log file for each instance can result in unreadable log files.

/LOGPrune=numdays | No
Use the /logprune parameter to disable log pruning or to explicitly request a prune of the log for one command run. By default, log pruning is enabled and performed once per day. The numdays variable represents the number of days to save log entries. By default, 60 days of log entries are saved in the prune process. You can use the Data Protection for Exchange GUI or the set command to change the defaults so that log pruning is disabled, or so that more or less days of log entries are saved. The command line user may use the /logprune parameter to override these defaults for one command run. Note that when the value of the /logprune variable numdays is a number in the range 0 to 9999, a prune is performed even if one has already been performed for the day.

Changes to the value of the timeformat or dateformat parameter can result in an undesired pruning of the Data Protection for Exchange log file. If you are running a command that may prune the log file and the value of the
timeformat or dateformat parameter has changed, perform one of the following to prevent undesired pruning of the log file:

- Make a copy of the existing log file.
- Specify a new log file with the /logfile parameter or logfile setting.

Examples

Example 1: The tdpexc query exchange command queries the Exchange server. An example of the output when this command is performed on Exchange Server 2003 is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

ACN5057I The C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPExchange\tdpexc.log log file has been pruned successfully.

Microsoft Exchange Server Information
-------------------------------------
Server Name: TESEXCH
Domain Name: emmaeus.test.local
Exchange Server Version: 6.0.4417.0

Storage Groups with Databases and Status
----------------------------------------
First Storage Group
Circular Logging - Disabled
  Mailbox Store (TESEXCH) Online
  Public Folder Store (TESEXCH) Online

Second Storage Group
Circular Logging - Disabled
  Mailbox Store SSG 1 Online
stg3
Circular Logging - Disabled
  mail3 Online

Example 2: This tdpexc query exchange command queries an Exchange Server 2003. The output example displays that a Recovery Storage Group exists and that all mailbox database will be restored to it.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Microsoft Exchange Server Information
-------------------------------------
Server Name: GUEST5
Domain Name: guest5.quest00.local
Exchange Server Version: 6.5.6944.0

Storage Groups with Databases and Status
----------------------------------------
First Storage Group
Circular Logging - Disabled
  Mailbox Store (GUEST5) Online
  Public Folder Store (GUEST5) Online

Chapter 5. Using the Command Line Interface
MySecond Storage Group
Circular Logging - Disabled
 secondmailbox Online

MyThird Storage Group
Circular Logging - Disabled
 thirdstoragebox Offline

Recovery Storage Group exists - All mailbox databases will be restored here.

Example 3: In this example, the tdpexc query exchange command queried an Exchange Server that is configured for VSS operations. The following output is displayed:

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

ACN5057I The C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPEXchange\tdpexc.log log file has been pruned successfully.

Microsoft Exchange Server Information
--------------------------------------
Server Name: ONY
Domain Name: optimus.zor.local
Exchange Server Version: 6.5.7638.1

Storage Groups with Databases and Status
----------------------------------------

First Storage Group
Circular Logging - Disabled
 forfun store Online
 Mailbox Store (ONY) Online
 Public Folder Store (ONY) Online

stg3
Circular Logging - Disabled
 mail1 Online
 mail2 Online
 mail3 Online

stg_big
Circular Logging - Disabled
 mail1 Online
 mail2 Online
 mail3 Online
 mail4 Online

test
Circular Logging - Disabled
 test1 Online

Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS) Information
--------------------------------------------

Writer Name : Microsoft Exchange Writer
Local DSMAgent Node : svc_ba
Remote DSMAgent Node : svc_offload
Writer Status : Online
Selectable Components : 4
**QUERY TDP**

Use this command to query a list of the current values set in the configuration file for Data Protection for Exchange.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
TDPExcc—Query TDP

/CONFigfile=tdpexc.cfg

/LOGFile=tdpexc.log

/LOGPrune=60

/SM590000

/SM590000

```

**Optional Parameters**

`/CONFigfile= configfilename`

Use the `CONFigfile` parameter to specify the name of the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file that contains the values for the Data Protection for Exchange configuration options. See “SET” on page 100 for details about the contents of the file.

The `configfilename` variable can include a fully qualified path. If the `configfilename` variable does not include a path, the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory is used.

**Considerations**

- If the `configfilename` variable includes spaces, the entire `CONFigfile` parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:
  `/CONFigfile="c:\Program Files\file.cfg"

- If the `/configfile` parameter is not specified, the default value is `tdpexc.cfg`.

- If the `/configfile` parameter is specified but the `configfilename` variable is not specified, the default value is `tdpexc.cfg`.

`/LOGFile= logfilename`

Use the `LOGfile` parameter to specify the name of the activity log file generated by Data Protection for Exchange.

The `logfilename` variable identifies the name of the activity log file.

If the specified log file does not exist, a new log file is created. If the specified log file exists, new log entries are appended to the file. The `logfilename` variable can include a fully-qualified path. However, if no path is specified, the log file is written to the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory.

If the `logfilename` variable includes spaces, the entire `LOGfile` parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:

`/LOGFile="c:\Program Files\mytdpexchange.log"

If the `LOGfile` parameter is not specified, log records are written to the default log file, `tdpexc.log`.

The `LOGfile` parameter cannot be turned off. You always get logging.
When using multiple simultaneous instances of Data Protection for Exchange to perform operations, use the /logfile parameter to specify a different log file for each instance used. This directs logging for each instance to a different log file and prevents interspersed log file records. Failure to specify a different log file for each instance can result in unreadable log files.

/LOGPrune=numdays | No

Use the /logprune parameter to disable log pruning or to explicitly request a prune of the log for one command run. By default, log pruning is enabled and performed once per day. The numdays variable represents the number of days to save log entries. By default, 60 days of log entries are saved in the prune process. You can use the Data Protection for Exchange GUI or the set command to change the defaults so that log pruning is disabled, or so that more or less days of log entries are saved. The command line user may use the /logprune parameter to override these defaults for one command run. Note that when the value of the /logprune variable numdays is a number in the range 0 to 9999, a prune is performed even if one has already been performed for the day.

Changes to the value of the timeformat or dateformat parameter can result in an undesired pruning of the Data Protection for Exchange log file. If you are running a command that may prune the log file and the value of the timeformat or dateformat parameter has changed, perform one of the following to prevent undesired pruning of the log file:

- Make a copy of the existing log file.
- Specify a new log file with the /logfile parameter or logfile setting.

Example

The tdpexc query tdp command queries the values set in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file. An example of the output in a Legacy configuration is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Data Protection for Exchange Preferences
-----------------------------------------------
BACKUPDESTination ..................... TSM
BACKUPMETHOD ....................... LEGACY
BUFFers ............................ 3
BUFFERSIZE ......................... 1024
DATEformat ......................... 1
LANGUAGE .......................... ENU
LOCALDSMAGENTnode .................
LOGFile ............................. tdpexc.log
LOGPrune .......................... 60
MOUNTWait .......................... Yes
NUMberformat ....................... 1
REMOTEAGENTnode .................
TEMPLLOGRESTOREPath ............. E:\TEMP
TIMEformat ........................ 1
An example of the output in a VSS configuration is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Data Protection for Exchange Preferences
----------------------------------------
BACKUPDESTination .................. TSM
BACKUPMETHOD ...................... VSS
BUFFers ............................. 3
BUFFERSize ......................... 1024
DATEformat ......................... 1
LANGUAGE ............................ ENU
LOCALDSMAgentnode ................. svc_ba
LOGFile ............................ tdpexc.log
LOGPrune ........................... 60
MOUNTWait ........................... Yes
NUMBERformat ........................ 1
REMO TEDSMAgentnode .............. machine1_ba
TEMPLOGRESTOREPath ............... c:\tdp\tdptemplog
TIMEFormat ........................ 1
QUERY TSM

Use this command to query Tivoli Storage Manager for information about the Tivoli Storage Manager API and the Tivoli Storage Manager server. This command can also display a list of backups that are stored on the Tivoli Storage Manager server that match the storage groups entered. Active and inactive objects can be displayed.

By default, only the active backup objects are displayed. To include inactive backup versions in the list, use the /all optional parameter.

Syntax

```
TDPEXCC—Query TSM—FULL—/ACTive

|sg-nameN|COPY—

|INCREmental—DIFFerential—DBCopy—db-name|

/ALL—/CONFIGfile=confilename

/FROMEXCSERVER=server-name

/LOGFile=logfilename /LOGPrune=numdays

/SKIPINTEGRITYCHECK—/TSMNODE=tsmnodename

/TSMOPTFile=tsmoptfilename /TSMPassword=tsmpassword
```

Positional Parameters

The following positional parameters specify the object to query. If none of these positional parameters are specified, only the Tivoli Storage Manager API and Tivoli Storage Manager server information is displayed:

* | DIR | IS | sg-name

* Query all backup objects for all storage groups

sg-name

Query all backup objects for the specified storage group. Multiple entries are separated by commas.

The following positional parameters specify the type of backup to query. If this parameter is not specified, all backup types will be displayed:

FULL | COPY | INCREmental | DIFFerential | DBCopy db-name
### Optional Parameters

/ACtive
Use the /active parameter to display active backup objects only. This is the default.

/ALL
Use the /all parameter to display both active and inactive backup objects. If the /all parameter is not specified, only active backup objects are displayed.

/CONFIGfile=configfilename
Use the /configfile parameter to specify the name of the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file that contains the values for the Data Protection for Exchange configuration options. See “SET” on page 100 for details about the contents of the file.

The configfilename variable can include a fully qualified path. If the configfilename variable does not include a path, the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory is used.

Considerations
- If the configfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /configfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:
  
  /CONFIGfile="c:\Program Files\file.cfg"

- If the /configfile parameter is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.
- If the /configfile parameter is specified but the configfilename variable is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.

/FROMEXCSERVER=server-name
Use the /fromexcserver parameter to specify the name of the Exchange Server where the original backup was performed.

The default is the local Exchange Server. However, you must specify the name if the Exchange Server is not the default or a member of an MCS.

/LOGFile=logfilename
Use the /logfile parameter to specify the name of the activity log file generated by Data Protection for Exchange.

The logfilename variable identifies the name of the activity log file.

If the specified log file does not exist, a new log file is created. If the specified log file exists, new log entries are appended to the file. The logfilename variable can include a fully-qualified path. However, if no path is specified, the log file is written to the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory.

If the logfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /logfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:

**FULL**  Query only Full backup types

**COPY**  Query only Copy backup types

**INCRemental**
Query only Incremental backup types

**DIFFerential**
Query only Differential backup types

**DBCopy db-name**
Query only database copy backups for database db-name.
/LOGFile="c:\Program Files\mytdpexchange.log"

If the /logfile parameter is not specified, log records are written to the
default log file, tdpexc.log.

The /logfile parameter cannot be turned off. You always get logging.

When using multiple simultaneous instances of Data Protection for
Exchange to perform operations, use the /logfile parameter to specify a
different log file for each instance used. This directs logging for each
instance to a different log file and prevents interspersed log file records.
Failure to specify a different log file for each instance can result in
unreadable log files.

/LOGPrune=numdays | No

Use the /logprune parameter to disable log pruning or to explicitly request
a prune of the log for one command run. By default, log pruning is
enabled and performed once per day. The numdays variable represents the
number of days to save log entries. By default, 60 days of log entries are
saved in the prune process. You can use the Data Protection for Exchange
GUI or the set command to change the defaults so that log pruning is
disabled, or so that more or less days of log entries are saved. The
command line user may use the /logprune parameter to override these
defaults for one command run. Note that when the value of the /logprune
variable numdays is a number in the range 0 to 9999, a prune is performed
even if one has already been performed for the day.

Changes to the value of the timeformat or dateformat parameter can result
in an undesired pruning of the Data Protection for Exchange log file. If you
are running a command that may prune the log file and the value of the
timeformat or dateformat parameter has changed, perform one of the
following to prevent undesired pruning of the log file:

- Make a copy of the existing log file.
- Specify a new log file with the /logfile parameter or logfile setting.

/TSMNODE=tsmnodename

The tsrnodename variable refers to the Tivoli Storage Manager node name
Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager
server. You can also store the node name in the Tivoli Storage Manager
options file. The command line parameter overrides the value in the Tivoli
Storage Manager options file if PASSWORDACCESS is set to PROMPT.
This parameter is not valid when PASSWORDACCESS is set to
GENERATE.

/TSMOPTFile=tsmoptfilename

The tsmoptfilename variable identifies the Data Protection for Exchange
options file.

The file name can include a fully qualified path name. If no path is
specified, the directory where Data Protection for Exchange is installed is
searched.

If the tsmoptfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /tsmoptfile
parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:

/TSMOPTFile="c:\Program Files\file.opt"

The default is dsm.opt.
/TSMPassword=tsmpassword

The tsmpassword variable refers to the Tivoli Storage Manager password Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. If you specified PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE in the Data Protection for Exchange options file, then the password need not be provided here because the one stored in the registry is used. However, in order to store the password in the registry, you must specify the Tivoli Storage Manager password the first time Data Protection for Exchange connects to the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

If you do specify a password on the command line when PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE is in effect, then the command line value is ignored unless the password for this node has not yet been stored in the registry. In that case, the specified password is the one that is stored in the registry and used for the current command execution.

If PASSWORDACCESS PROMPT is in effect, and a password value is not specified on the command line, then you are prompted for a password.

The Tivoli Storage Manager password Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server can be up to 63 characters in length.

Examples

Example 1: The tdpexc query tsm command displays information about the Tivoli Storage Manager API and Tivoli Storage Manager server. An example of the output is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:  
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server  
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3  
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

ACN5057I The C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPExchange\tdpexc.log log file has been pruned successfully.

Tivoli Storage Manager Server Connection Information  
-----------------------------------------------

NodeName .................. TURKEY  
NetWork Host Name of Server ............ FIREFLY.DOMAINXYZ.COM  
TSM API Version ..................... Version 5, Release 3, Level 3  

    Server Name .................. FIREFLY  
    Server Type .................... Windows  
    Server Version ................ Version 5, Release 3, Level 2.0  
    Compression Mode .............. Client Determined  
    Domain Name .................... TSSVT1  
    Active Policy Set .............. TSSVT1  
    Default Management Class ........ TSSVT1
Example 2: The `tdpexc query tsm * /all` command displays information about the list of backups on the Tivoli Storage Manager server. An example of the output when this command is performed on Exchange Server 2003 in a VSS configuration is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Querying Tivoli Storage Manager server for a list of database backups, please wait...

```
Backup List
-----------

  Exchange Server : ONYX
  Storage Group   : stg2

  Backup Date         Size   S Fmt  Type       Loc    Object Name/Database Name
  ------------------- -------- ----- ------- ------- --------------- ------------------------------
  01/17/2006 09:47:06 114.04MB I VSS  full    Srv    20060117094706  mailbox1
                      42.02MB     65.01MB                      Logs
                      7,184.00KB        mailbox2
  01/17/2006 10:09:00  64.04MB A VSS  full    Srv    20060117100900  mailbox1
                      42.02MB     15.01MB                      Logs
                      7,184.00KB        mailbox2
  01/17/2006 13:16:23  79.04MB A VSS  full    Loc    20060117131623  mailbox1
                      42.02MB     30.01MB                      Logs
                      7,184.00KB        mailbox2
```
Backup Command

The backup command is shown below.

**BACKUP**

The `backup` command performs Exchange Server storage group backups from the Exchange Server to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. You must have local registry rights (for all versions of Exchange Server) to perform a Data Protection for Exchange backup. This command also backs up Key Management Service (KMS) databases and Site Replication Service (SRS) databases. Use the `/excapplication` option when backing up these databases.

When a full Legacy backup is performed, all active Legacy backups previous to this full backup are automatically inactivated for the particular storage group that is being backed up.

**Note:** Microsoft Exchange Server considers the wildcard character (*) to be an invalid character when used in database and storage group names. As a result, database and storage groups that contain the wildcard character (*) in their name will not be backed up.

When a full VSS snapshot backup (created for back up to local shadow volumes) is performed, the backup remains active until the backup version is expired on the Tivoli Storage Manager server according to the defined server policy. As a result, five different active backups can exist at the same time:

- Legacy
- VSS local (full)
- VSS local (copy)
- VSS Tivoli Storage Manager server (full)
- VSS Tivoli Storage Manager server (copy)

For SAN Volume Controller storage subsystems, only one backup is allowed to occur while the background copy process is pending. A new backup is not performed until the background copy process for the previous backup completes. As a result, local backups for SAN Volume Controller storage subsystems should be initiated at a frequency greater than the time required for the background copy process to complete.

See “Backup strategies” on page 11 for additional information related to the `backup` command.

Data Protection for Exchange supports the following types of backup:

**Full (Legacy and VSS)**

Back up the entire storage group and transaction logs, and if a successful backup is obtained, deletes the transaction logs.

**Incremental (Legacy only)**

Back up the transaction logs, and if a successful backup is obtained, deletes the transaction logs.

**Differential (Legacy only)**

Back up the transaction logs but do NOT delete them.

**Copy (Legacy and VSS)**

Back up the entire storage group and transaction logs, do NOT delete the transaction logs.
Database Copy (Legacy only)

Back up only the specified database and transaction logs, do NOT delete the transaction logs (Exchange 2000 Server only)

Note: If there are databases within a storage group that are not mounted at the time of the backup, the transaction logs will NOT be deleted.

Syntax

```
TDPEXCC—BACKup
  —sg-name, sg-name
  —"SRS Storage"
  —"Key Management Service"
  —FULL
  —COPY
  —INCREMENTal
  —DIFFerential
  —DBCopY—db-name

/BACKUPDESTination=—LOCAL
  —LOCAL
  —BOTH

/BACKUPMETHOD=—LEGACY
  —VSS

/BUFFers=—numbuffers
  —1024

/BUFFERSize=—buffersize

/CONFIGfile=—configfilename

/EXCAPPlication=—IS
  —KMS
  —SRS

/EXCSERVER=—server-name

/LOGFile=—logfilename
  —60

/LOGPrune=—numdays

/MOUNTWait=—Yes
  —No

/OFFLOAD

/QUIet

/SKIPINTEGRITYCHECK

/TSMNODE=—tsmnodename

/TSMOPTFile=—tsmoptfilename

/TSMPassword=—tsmpassword
```
Positional Parameters
The following positional parameters specify the object to back up:

* | DIR | IS | \textit{sg-name}

* Back up all storage groups sequentially.

\textit{sg-name}  
Back up the specified storage group. Multiple entries are separated by commas. If any storage group contains commas or blanks, enclose the storage group name in quotes.

The following positional parameters specify the type of backup to perform:

**FULL** | **COPY** | **INCREMENTAL** | **DIFFERENTIAL** | **DBCopy** \textit{db-name}

**FULL** (Legacy and VSS)  
Back up the entire storage group and transaction logs, and if a successful backup is obtained, truncate the transaction logs.

**COPY** (Legacy and VSS)  
Back up the entire storage group and transaction logs, do NOT truncate the transaction logs.

**INCREMENTAL** (Legacy only)  
Back up the transaction logs, and if a successful backup is obtained, truncate the transaction logs.

**DIFFERENTIAL** (Legacy only)  
Back up the transaction logs but do NOT truncate them.

**DBCopy** \textit{db-name} (Legacy only)  
Back up only the specified database and transaction logs, do NOT truncate the transaction logs. Note that this type of backup is not available with a VSS snapshot backup.

If there are databases within a storage group that are not mounted at the time of the backup, the transaction logs will NOT be truncated.

Optional Parameters

**/BACKUPDESTINATION=**\texttt{TSM | LOCAL | BOTH}

Use the \texttt{/backupdestination} parameter to specify the location where the backup is stored.

You can specify:

**TSM**  
The backup is stored on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage only. This is the default.

**LOCAL**  
The backup is stored on local shadow volumes only. This is only valid when the \texttt{/backupmethod} parameter specifies VSS.

**BOTH**  
The backup is stored on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage and local shadow volumes. This is only valid when the \texttt{/backupmethod} parameter specifies VSS.

**/BACKUPMETHOD=**\texttt{LEGACY | VSS}

Use the \texttt{/backupmethod} parameter to specify the manner in which the backup is performed.

You can specify:
LEGACY
The backup is performed with the legacy API. This is the Exchange streaming backup and restore API as used in previous versions of Data Protection for Exchange. This is the default.

VSS The backup is performed with VSS.

/BUFFers=number
Use the /BUFFers parameter to specify the number of data buffers used for moving data between the Exchange Server and the Tivoli Storage Manager API during Legacy backup and restore operations. Separate, asynchronous execution threads are used by Data Protection for Exchange for communicating with the Exchange Server and Tivoli Storage Manager APIs. Increasing the number of data buffers improves throughput by reducing the possibility of one thread having to wait for another thread.

The number variable refers to the number of data buffers to use. The number of data buffers can be from 2 to 8. The default number of data buffers is 3.

/BUFFERSize=buffersize
Use the /BUFFERSize parameter to specify the size of data buffers used to move data between the Exchange Server and the Tivoli Storage Manager API during Legacy backup and restore operations.

The buffersize variable refers to the size of the data buffers in kilobytes. The size of the data buffers can be from 64 to 8192 kilobytes. The default size of the data buffers is 1024 kilobytes.

/CONFIGfile=configfilename
Use the /CONFIGfile parameter to specify the name of the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file that contains the values for the Data Protection for Exchange configuration options. See “SET” on page 100 for details about the contents of the file.

The configfilename variable can include a fully qualified path. If the configfilename variable does not include a path, the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory is used.

Considerations
• If the configfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /CONFIGfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example: /CONFIGfile="c:\Program Files\file.cfg"
• If the /CONFIGfile parameter is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.
• If the /CONFIGfile parameter is specified but the configfilename variable is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.

/EXCAPplication=KMS | SRS
Use the /EXCAPplication parameter to specify the name of the KMS database or SRS database to be backed up during a Legacy backup operation. You must also specify "SRS Storage" or "Key Management Service" for the storage group name in the command line syntax. The KMS or SRS database must be online and running to be backed up.

You can specify:
KMS The Key Management Service database is backed up.
SRS The Site Replication Service database is backed up.
If no value is specified, Data Protection for Exchange backs up the Information Store database.

/EXCSERVER=server-name
Use the /excsrver parameter to specify the name of the Exchange Server to be backed up.

The server-name variable specifies the name of the Exchange Server to be backed up.

Considerations
- If the Exchange Server to be backed up is a member of a Microsoft Cluster Server, this parameter must be specified and must be set to the Exchange virtual server name.
- The default value is the local Exchange Server.

/LOGFile=logfile
Use the /logfile parameter to specify the name of the activity log file generated by Data Protection for Exchange.

The logfile variable identifies the name of the activity log file.

If the specified log file does not exist, a new log file is created. If the specified log file exists, new log entries are appended to the file. The logfile variable can include a fully-qualified path. However, if no path is specified, the log file is written to the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory.

If the logfile variable includes spaces, the entire logfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:
/LOGFile="c:\Program Files\mytdpexchange.log"

If the logfile parameter is not specified, log records are written to the default log file, tdpexc.log.

The logfile parameter cannot be turned off. You always get logging.

When using multiple simultaneous instances of Data Protection for Exchange to perform operations, use the logfile parameter to specify a different log file for each instance used. This directs logging for each instance to a different log file and prevents interspersed log file records. Failure to specify a different log file for each instance can result in unreadable log files.

/LOGPrune=numdays|No
Use the logfile parameter to disable log pruning or to explicitly request a prune of the log for one command run. By default, log pruning is enabled and performed once per day. The numdays variable represents the number of days to save log entries. By default, 60 days of log entries are saved in the prune process. You can use the Data Protection for Exchange GUI or the set command to change the defaults so that log pruning is disabled, or so that more or less days of log entries are saved. The command line user may use the /logprune parameter to override these defaults for one command run. Note that when the value of the logprune variable numdays is a number in the range 0 to 9999, a prune is performed even if one has already been performed for the day.

Changes to the value of the timeformat or dateformat parameter can result in an undesired pruning of the Data Protection for Exchange log file. If you are running a command that may prune the log file and the value of the
timeformat or dateformat parameter has changed, perform one of the following to prevent undesired pruning of the log file:

- Make a copy of the existing log file.
- Specify a new log file with the /logfile parameter or logfile setting.

/MOUNTWait=Yes|No

If the Tivoli Storage Manager server is configured to store the backup data on removable media (such as tapes), then it is possible that the Tivoli Storage Manager server might indicate to Data Protection for Exchange that it is waiting for a required storage volume to be mounted. If that occurs, this parameter allows you to specify whether Data Protection for Exchange should wait for the media mount or stop the current operation.

You can specify:
Yes Wait for tape mounts. This is the default.
No Do not wait for tape mounts.

/OFFLOAD

Specify this parameter to perform the integrity check and backup of files to Tivoli Storage Manager on the machine specified by the remotedsmagentnode instead of the local machine. This parameter is ONLY valid when /backupmethod=VSS and /backupdestination=TSM.

Note that this parameter requires a VSS provider that supports transportable shadow copies. It is not supported with the default Windows VSS System Provider.

/Quiet This parameter prevents status information from being displayed. This does not affect the level of information written to the activity log.

/SKIPINTEGRITYCHECK

Specify this parameter to bypass the Exchange integrity check typically performed during a backup. This parameter is ONLY valid when /backupmethod=VSS and the backup type is COPY.

Attention:

When using this parameter, it is possible that the stored backup is not valid because it is not being verified with the Exchange integrity check utility. Make sure that you have a valid backup stored on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.

/TSMNODE=tsmnode

The tsmnode variable refers to the Tivoli Storage Manager node name Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. You can also store the node name in the Tivoli Storage Manager options file. The command line parameter overrides the value in the Tivoli Storage Manager options file if PASSWORDACCESS is set to PROMPT. This parameter is not valid when PASSWORDACCESS is set to GENERATE.

/TSMOPTFile=tsmoptfilename

The tsmoptfilename variable identifies the Data Protection for Exchange options file.

The file name can include a fully qualified path name. If no path is specified, the directory where Data Protection for Exchange is installed is searched.

If the tsmoptfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /tsmoptfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:
/TSMOPTFile="c:\Program Files\file.opt"

The default is dsm.opt.

/TSMPassword=tsmpassword

The tsmpassword variable refers to the Tivoli Storage Manager password Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. If you specified PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE in the Data Protection for Exchange options file, then the password need not be provided here because the one stored in the registry is used. However, in order to store the password in the registry, you must specify the Tivoli Storage Manager password the first time Data Protection for Exchange connects to the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

If you do specify a password on the command line when PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE is in effect, then the command line value is ignored unless the password for this node has not yet been stored in the registry. In that case, the specified password is the one that is stored in the registry and used for the current command execution.

If PASSWORDACCESS PROMPT is in effect, and a password value is not specified on the command line, then you are prompted for a password.

The Tivoli Storage Manager password Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server can be up to 63 characters in length.

Examples

Example 1: The tdpexec command performs an incremental backup of Exchange 2000 Server storage groups identified as First Storage Group and Second Storage Group. An example of the output is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Starting storage group backup...

Beginning incr backup of First Storage Group, 1 of 2.
Full: 0  Read: 278  Written: 0  Rate: 0.00 Kb/Sec
Full: 2  Read: 9437462  Written: 5243158  Rate: 2 284.82 Kb/Sec
Full: 2  Read: 15728934  Written: 12583198  Rate: 3 797.37 Kb/Sec
Full: 0  Read: 20971822  Written: 20971822  Rate: 4 834.82 Kb/Sec
Full: 0  Read: 20971822  Written: 20971822  Rate: 4 834.82 Kb/Sec

Backup of First Storage Group completed successfully.

Beginning incr backup of Second Storage Group, 2 of 2.
Full: 0  Read: 198  Written: 0  Rate: 0.00 Kb/Sec
Full: 1  Read: 7340238  Written: 5243078  Rate: 2 305.35 Kb/Sec
Full: 0  Read: 10485966  Written: 10485966  Rate: 3 179.20 Kb/Sec
Full: 0  Read: 10485966  Written: 10485966  Rate: 3 179.20 Kb/Sec

Backup of Second Storage Group completed successfully.

Total storage groups requested for backup: 2
Total storage groups backed up: 2
Total storage groups expired: 0
Total storage groups excluded: 0
Example 2: The `tdpexc backup "Second Storage Group" dbc "Mailbox Store SSG 1"` command performs a database copy backup of Exchange 2000 Server database `Mailbox Store SSG 1`, located in storage group `Second Storage Group`. An example of the output is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

ACN5057I The C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPExchange\tdpexc.log log file has been pruned successfully.

Starting storage group backup...

Beginning dbcopy backup of storage group <Second Storage Group>,
database <Mailbox Store SSG 1>, 1 of 1.
Full: 2 Read: 7348466 Written: 3154162 Rate: 2 502.22 Kb/Sec
Full: 0 Read: 7356900 Written: 3 221.74 Kb/Sec
Full: 2 Read: 11551204 Written: 7356900 Rate: 2 223.61 Kb/Sec
Full: 2 Read: 12608200 Written: 11551204 Rate: 2 666.15 Kb/Sec
Full: 0 Read: 12608200 Written: 12608200 Rate: 2 353.79 Kb/Sec
Full: 0 Read: 12608200 Written: 12608200 Rate: 2 353.79 Kb/Sec

Backup of Second Storage Group completed successfully.

Total storage groups requested for backup: 1
Total storage groups backed up: 1
Total storage groups expired: 0
Total storage groups excluded: 0

Throughput rate: 2 350.20 Kb/Sec
Total bytes transferred: 12 608 200
Elapsed processing time: 5.24 Secs

Example 3: The `tdpexc backup stg2 full /backupdestination=tsm` 
/backupmethod=vss` command performs a full VSS Backup of Exchange 2003 Server storage group `stg2` to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. An example of the output is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Connecting to TSM Server as node 'SVC_TDP'...
Connecting to Local DSM Agent 'svc Ba'...

Beginning VSS backup of 'stg2'...

Preparing to backup using snapshot.
Executing system command: Exchange integrity check for storage group 'stg2'
Files Examined/Completed/Failed: [ 17 / 17 / 0 ] Total Bytes: 67192452

VSS Backup operation completed with rc = 0
Files Examined : 17
Files Completed : 17
Files Failed : 0
Total Bytes : 67192452
Example 4: The `tdpexcc backup stg2 full /backupdestination=local /backupmethod=vss` command performs a full VSS Backup of Exchange 2003 Server storage group `stg2` to local shadow volumes. An example of the output is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Connecting to TSM Server as node 'SVC_TDP'...
Connecting to Local DSM Agent 'svc_ba'...

Beginning VSS backup of 'stg2'...

Preparing to backup using snapshot.
Executing system command: Exchange integrity check for storage group 'stg2'
Files Examined/Completed/Failed: [ 10 / 10 / 0 ] Total Bytes: 33547

VSS Backup operation completed with rc = 0
Files Examined : 10
Files Completed : 10
Files Failed : 0
Total Bytes : 33547

Example 5: The `tdpexcc backup * full /backupdestination=both /backupmethod=vss` command performs a full VSS Backup of Exchange 2003 Server storage groups `stg2`, `stg3`, `stg4`, and `First Storage Group` to local shadow volumes and to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. An example of the output is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Connecting to TSM Server as node 'TDP_REAL'...
Connecting to Local DSM Agent 'ba_real'...
Starting storage group backup...

Beginning VSS backup of 'stg2', 'First Storage Group', 'stg4', 'stg3'...

Preparing to backup using snapshot.
Executing system command: Exchange integrity check for storage group 'stg4'
Executing system command: Exchange integ chk strg grp 'First Storage Group'
Executing system command: Exchange integrity check for storage group 'stg2'
Executing system command: Exchange integrity check for storage group 'stg3'
Files Examined/Completed/Failed: [ 187 / 187 / 0 ] Total Bytes: 6706246239

VSS Backup operation completed with rc = 0
Files Examined : 187
Files Completed : 187
Files Failed : 0
Total Bytes : 6706246239
Restoring Commands

The restore commands are described in this section.

RESTORE

Use this command to restore a storage group backup from Tivoli Storage Manager storage to an Exchange Server. You must have local registry rights (for all versions of Exchange Server) to perform a Data Protection for Exchange restore. This command also restores Key Management Service (KMS) databases and Site Replication Service (SRS) databases. Use the /exapplication option when restoring these databases.

When using the restore command, keep the following points in mind:

- When restoring inactive backups or active incremental backups, use the /object parameter to specify the name of the backup object to restore. This object name uniquely identifies the backup instance in Tivoli Storage Manager storage. You can issue a tdpexcc query tsm command to obtain a list of the object names.

**Note:** If the tdpexcc restore sname incr command is entered (without the /object parameter) to restore multiple active incremental backups, all multiple active incremental backups are restored sequentially. The /object parameter is used to restore only one incremental backup at a time.

- IMPORTANT: To initiate recovery, you MUST use the /recover parameter when restoring the last backup object of a storage group. In addition, the value of /templogrestorepath should not be the same value as the current location for the storage group. If the value is the same, corruption can occur.
  - Specify /recover=applyalllogs to replay the restored transaction log entries AND the current active transaction log entries.
  - Specify /recover=applyrestoredlogs to replay ONLY the restored transaction log entries. The current active transaction log entries will NOT be replayed.

**Note:** When choosing this option for a restore, your next backup MUST be a full or copy backup.

Failure to use the /recover parameter when restoring the last backup set of a storage group leaves the databases unmountable. If this occurs, for Legacy backups you can either restore the last backup again and specify the /recover=value option or you can use the Microsoft ESEUTIL /cc command to run recovery manually.

- Specify /mountdatabases=yes if you are restoring the last backup set and you want the databases within the storage group automatically mounted after the recovery completes. Note that when restoring mailbox databases to a Recovery Storage Group with Exchange Server 2003, the mailbox databases will be restored to the Recovery Storage Group (when a Group exists) and that the original databases will not be dismounted. Only transaction logs that are contained in the backup will be applied to the mailbox database when performing a Recovery Storage Group restore. You must specify /recover=applyrestoredlogs when restoring a mailbox database to a Recovery Storage Group or the restore operation may fail.

The GUI provides an easy-to-use, flexible interface to help you perform a restore operation. The interface presents information in a way that allows multiple selection and, in some cases, automatic operation.
Note: Microsoft Exchange Server considers the wildcard character (*) to be an invalid character when used in database and storage group names. As a result, database and storage groups that contain the wildcard character (*) in their name will not be backed up.

Data Protection for Exchange supports the following types of restore:

Full (Legacy and VSS)
  Restore a Full type backup

Copy (Legacy and VSS)
  Restore a Copy type backup

Incremental (Legacy only)
  Restore an Incremental type backup

Differential (Legacy only)
  Restore a Differential type backup

Database copy (Legacy only)
  Restore a Database Copy type backup.

VSS restore considerations
Be aware of the following considerations when performing VSS restores. Unless otherwise specified, "VSS restores" refers to all restore types that use VSS (VSS Restore, VSS Fast Restore, VSS Instant Restore):

- VSS restores ignore the Recovery Storage Group and are placed directly into the production database.
- The VSS Backups to be restored must be from the same snapshot (i.e. contain the same timestamp). VSS Backups that contain different timestamps must be restored one at a time and cannot be restored together in a single operation.
- A VSS Instant Restore overwrites the entire contents of the source volumes. However, you can avoid overwriting the source volumes by specifying /INSTANTRESTORE=NO. This parameter bypasses volume-level copy and uses file-level copy instead to restore the files from a VSS Backup that resides on local shadow volumes.
- Unlike Legacy restores (which only dismount the database being restored), VSS restores dismount all databases in the storage group that is being restored.
- If a hardware provider is used, the disks that contain Exchange data must be configured as basic.
- Be aware that when a VSS restore from local shadow volumes is performed, the bytes transferred will display "0". That is because no data ("0") is restored from the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
Syntax

```
TDPEXCC RESTore ^g-name, ^g-nameN ^F, ^C, ^I ^D ^D ^D

/BACKUPDESTination backupdestination or tdpexc.cfg
   TSM
   LOCAL

/BACKUPMETHOD backupmethod or tdpexc.cfg
   LEGACY
   VSS

/BUFFers 3
   numbuffers
   /BUFFERSIze 1024
   buffersize

/CONFIGfile tdpexc.cfg
   /EXCAPPLICATION KMS, SRS

/EXCSERVer local Exchange server
   server-name

/FROMEXCSERVer local Exchange server
   server-name

/INSTANTRESTORE Yes
   No

/LOGFile tdpexc.log
   /LOGPrune 60
      numdays
      No
      /MOUNTDAtabases Yes
      /MOUNTWait Yes
      /OFFLOAD

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail: Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server Installation and User’s Guide
```
/OBJect= current backup object

/PARTial= dbname1, dbnameN

/TEMPLOGRESTorepath= path-name

/RECOVer= APPLYALLlogs

/SKIPINTEGRITYCHECK

/TSMNODe= tsmnodename

/TSMOPTFile= dsm.opt

/TSMPassword= tsmpassword

/BACKUPDEStination= TSM | LOCAL

Positional Parameters
The following positional parameters specify the object to restore:

* | sg-name
   * Restore all storage groups sequentially.
   
   sg-name
   Restore the specified storage group. Multiple entries are separated by commas. If any storage group contains commas or blanks, enclose the storage group name in quotes.

The following positional parameters specify the type of restore to perform:

FULL | COPY | INCRemental | DIFFerential | DBCopy db-name

FULL (Legacy and VSS)
Restore a Full type backup

COPY (Legacy and VSS)
Restore a Copy type backup

INCRemental (Legacy only)
Restore an Incremental type backup

DIFFerential (Legacy only)
Restore a Differential type backup

DBCopy db-name (Legacy only)
Restore the db-name database copy backup.

Optional Parameters

Use the /backupdestination parameter to specify the location from where the backup is to be restored. The default is the value (if present) specified in the Data Protection for Exchange preferences file (tdpexc.cfg). If no value is present, the backup is restored from Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.

You can specify:

TSM The backup is restored from Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.
This is the default if no value is specified in the Data Protection for Exchange preferences file (tdpexc.cfg).

LOCAL
The backup is restored from the local shadow volumes.

/BACKUPMETHod=LEGACY|VSS
Use the /backupmethod parameter to specify the manner in which the restore is performed. The default is the value (if present) specified in the Data Protection for Exchange preferences file (tdpexc.cfg). If no value is present, the backup is restored with the legacy API.

You can specify:

LEGACY
The restore is performed with the legacy API. This is the default if no value is specified in the Data Protection for Exchange preferences file (tdpexc.cfg).

VSS The restore is performed with VSS.

/BUFFers=numbuffers
Use the /buffers parameter to specify the number of data buffers used for moving data between the Exchange Server and the Tivoli Storage Manager API during Legacy restore operations. Separate, asynchronous execution threads are used by Data Protection for Exchange for communicating with the Exchange Server and Tivoli Storage Manager APIs. Increasing the number of data buffers improves throughput by reducing the possibility of one thread having to wait for another thread.

The numbuffers variable refers to the number of data buffers to use. The number of data buffers can be from 2 to 8. The default number of data buffers is 3.

/BUFFERSIze=buffersize
Use the /buffersize parameter to specify the size of data buffers used to move data between the Exchange Server and the Tivoli Storage Manager API during Legacy backup and restore operations.

The buffersize variable refers to the size of the data buffers in kilobytes. The size of the data buffers can be from 64 to 8192 kilobytes. The default size of the data buffers is 1024 kilobytes.

/CONFIGfile=configfilename
Use the /configfile parameter to specify the name of the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file that contains the values for the Data Protection for Exchange configuration options. See “SET” on page 100 for details about the contents of the file.

The configfilename variable can include a fully qualified path. If the configfilename variable does not include a path, the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory is used.

Considerations
- If the configfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /configfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example: /CONFIGfile="c:\Program Files\file.cfg"
- If the /configfile parameter is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.
- If the /configfile parameter is specified but the configfilename variable is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.
/EXCAPPLICATION=KMS | SRS
Use the /excaplication parameter to specify the name of the KMS database or SRS database to be restored.

You can specify:
KMS  The Key Management Service database is restored.
SRS  The Site Replication Service database is restored.

If no value is specified, Data Protection for Exchange restores the Information Store database.

Note: Restoring a KMS or SRS database requires special considerations. It is recommended that you review these considerations documented in the Microsoft Product Services Support White Paper, "Exchange 2000 Server Database Recovery", available at this Web site:

/EXCSERVER=server-name
Use the /excserver parameter to specify the name of the Exchange Server to restore to.

The server-name variable specifies the name of the Exchange Server to be restored to.

Considerations
• If the Exchange Server to be restored is a member of a Microsoft Cluster Server, this parameter must be specified and must be set to the name of the Exchange virtual server.
• The default value is the local Exchange Server.

/FROMEXCSERVER=server-name
Use the /fromexcserver parameter to specify the name of the Exchange Server where the original backup was performed.

The default is the local Exchange Server. However, you must specify the name if the Exchange Server is not the default or is a member of an MSCS.

/INSTANTRESTORE=Yes | No
Use the /instantrestore parameter to determine whether to use volume level snapshot or file level copy to restore a VSS Backup that resides on local shadow volumes. Note that SAN Volume Controller is required to perform VSS Instant Restores.

You can specify:
Yes  Use volume level snapshot restore for a VSS Backup that resides on local shadow volumes if the backup exists on volumes that support it. This is the default.
No  Use file level copy to restore the files from a VSS Backup that resides on local shadow volumes. Note that bypassing volume-level copy means that Exchange database files, log files, and the checkpoint file are the only data overwritten on the source volumes.

/LOGFile=logfilename
Use the /logfile parameter to specify the name of the activity log file generated by Data Protection for Exchange.

The logfilename variable identifies the name of the activity log file.

If the specified log file does not exist, a new log file is created. If the specified log file exists, new log entries are appended to the file. The
logfile variable can include a fully-qualified path. However, if no path is specified, the log file is written to the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory.

If the logfile variable includes spaces, the entire logfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:

/logfile="c:\Program Files\mytdpexchange.log"

If the logfile parameter is not specified, log records are written to the default log file, tdpexc.log.

The logfile parameter cannot be turned off. You always get logging.

When using multiple simultaneous instances of Data Protection for Exchange to perform operations, use the logfile parameter to specify a different log file for each instance used. This directs logging for each instance to a different log file and prevents interspersed log file records. Failure to specify a different log file for each instance can result in unreadable log files.

/LOGPrune=numdays | No

Use the logprune parameter to disable log pruning or to explicitly request a prune of the log for one command run. By default, log pruning is enabled and performed once per day. The numdays variable represents the number of days to save log entries. By default, 60 days of log entries are saved in the prune process. You can use the Data Protection for Exchange GUI or the set command to change the defaults so that log pruning is disabled, or so that more or less days of log entries are saved. The command line user may use the logprune parameter to override these defaults for one command run. Note that when the value of the logprune variable numdays is a number in the range 0 to 9999, a prune is performed even if one has already been performed for the day.

Changes to the value of the timeformat or dateformat parameter can result in an undesired pruning of the Data Protection for Exchange log file. If you are running a command that may prune the log file and the value of the timeformat or dateformat parameter has changed, perform one of the following to prevent undesired pruning of the log file:

• Make a copy of the existing log file.
• Specify a new log file with the logfile parameter or logfile setting.

/ MOUNTDAtabases=No | Yes

Use the mountdatabases parameter to specify whether to mount the databases after the restore operation completes. You MUST specify one of the following values:

Yes Mount the databases after the restore operation completes.
No Do not mount the databases after the restore operation completes.

This is the default.

/MOUNTWait=Yes | No

If the Tivoli Storage Manager server is configured to store the backup data on removable media (such as tapes), then it is possible that the Tivoli Storage Manager server might indicate to Data Protection for Exchange that it is waiting for a required storage volume to be mounted. If that occurs, this parameter allows you to specify whether Data Protection for Exchange should wait for the media mount or stop the current operation.

You can specify:
Yes | Wait for tape mounts. This is the default.
No  | Do not wait for tape mounts.

/OBJect=object-name
Use the /object parameter to specify the name of the backup object you want to restore. The object name uniquely identifies each backup object and is created by Data Protection for Exchange.

Use the Data Protection for Exchange query tsm command to view the names of the backup objects.

If the tdpexcc restore sname incr command is entered (without the /object parameter) to restore multiple active incremental backups, all multiple active incremental backups are restored sequentially. The /object parameter is used to restore only one incremental backup at a time.

/PARTial=dbname1,dbnameN
Use the /partial parameter to specify that only the named databases (dbname1,dbnameN) within the full or copy backup should be restored.

Considerations
- If you specify this option, you must include at least one valid database name.
- If you do not specify this option, all databases within the backup are restored.

/Quiet This parameter prevents status information from being displayed. This does not affect the level of information written to the activity log.

/RECOVER=APPLYRESToredlogs | APPLYALLlogs
Use this parameter to specify whether or not you want to run recovery after you restore an object. It is recommended this parameter be specified on the last backup object restored for any particular storage group. To initiate recovery, you MUST use the /recovery parameter when restoring the last backup object of a storage group. In addition, the value of /templogrestorepath should not be the same value as the current location for the storage group. If the value is the same, corruption can occur.
Failure to use the /recovery parameter when restoring the last backup set of a storage group leaves the databases unmountable. If this occurs, you can either restore the last backup again and specify the /recovery=value option or you can use the Microsoft ESEUTIL /cc command to run recovery manually.

You MUST specify one of the following values when using this parameter:

APPLYALLlogs
Specify /recovery=applyalllogs to replay the restored transaction log entries AND the current active transaction log entries. Any transaction logs entries that appear in the current active transaction log are replayed. This is the default.

APPLYRESToredlogs
Specify /recovery=applyrestoredlogs to replay ONLY the restored transaction log entries. The current active transaction log entries will NOT be replayed. When restoring a mailbox database to a Recovery Storage Group on Exchange Server 2003, you must specify /recovery=applyrestoredlogs or the restore operation may fail.

Note: When choosing this option for a restore, your next backup MUST be a full or copy backup.
Considerations

- When restoring multiple backup objects, the /recover option should be used on the restore of the last object.

Note: If you specify /recover=applyrestoredlogs when performing a restore, the next backup of the storage group MUST be a full backup.

/TEMPLOGRESTorepath=path-name

Use the /templogrestorepath parameter to specify the default temporary path to use when restoring logs and patch files. For best performance, this should be on a different physical device than the current active logger.

If the /templogrestorepath parameter is not specified, the default value is the value specified by the TEMPLLOGRESTOREPATH option in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file. The default Data Protection for Exchange configuration file is tdpexc.cfg.

If the /templogrestorepath parameter is not specified and the value does not exist in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file, the TEMP environment variable value is used.

Note: When performing a full, copy, or dbcopy restore, all log files residing in the path specified by the /templogrestorepath parameter are erased.

In addition, the value of /templogrestorepath should not be the same value as the current location for the storage group. If the value is the same, corruption can occur.

Note: Do not specify double-byte characters (DBCS) within the temporary log path. This is not supported by Data Protection for Exchange or Microsoft.

/TSMNODE=tsmnodename

The tsmnodename variable refers to the Tivoli Storage Manager node name. Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. You can also store the node name in the Tivoli Storage Manager options file. The command line parameter overrides the value in the Tivoli Storage Manager options file if PASSWORDACCESS is set to PROMPT. This parameter is not valid when PASSWORDACCESS is set to GENERATE.

/TSMOPTFile=tsmoptfilename

The tsmoptfilename variable identifies the Data Protection for Exchange options file.

The file name can include a fully qualified path name. If no path is specified, the directory where Data Protection for Exchange is installed is searched.

If the tsmoptfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /tsmoptfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:

/TSMOPTFile="c:\Program Files\file.opt"

The default is dsm.opt.

/TSMPassword=tsmpassword

The tsmpassword variable refers to the Tivoli Storage Manager password. Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager.
server. If you specified PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE in the Data Protection for Exchange options file, then the password need not be provided here because the one stored in the registry is used. However, in order to store the password in the registry, you must specify the Tivoli Storage Manager password the first time Data Protection for Exchange connects to the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

If you do specify a password on the command line when PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE is in effect, then the command line value is ignored unless the password for this node has not yet been stored in the registry. In that case, the specified password is the one that is stored in the registry and used for the current command execution.

If PASSWORDACCESS PROMPT is in effect, and a password value is not specified on the command line, then you are prompted for a password.

The Tivoli Storage Manager password Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server can be up to 63 characters in length.

Examples

Example 1: The tdpexcc restore sg3.sg3 full/recover=applyallogs command restores a full type backup of the Exchange 2000 Server storage group identified as sg3.sg3, and replays the restored transaction log entries AND the current active transaction log entries. An example of the output is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Starting Microsoft Exchange restore...

Logging on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server, please wait...

Beginning full restore of storage group sg3.sg3 <07/16/2002 11:14:12>, 1 of 1, to sg3.sg3
Full: 1 Read: 26314796 Written: 26314796 Rate: 3,589.11 Kb/Sec
Restore of sg3.sg3 completed successfully.

Total backups inspected: 1
Total backups requested for restore: 1
Total backups restored: 1
Throughput rate: 1,054.11 Kb/Sec
Total bytes transferred: 26,314,796
Elapsed processing time: 24.38 Secs
Example 2: The tdpexcc restore sg3.sg3 dbcopy "A Public Store"
/recover=applyalllogs command restores a database copy backup of Exchange 2000
Server database A Public Store, located in storage group sg3.sg3, and replays the
restored transaction log entries AND the current active transaction log entries. An
example of the output is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Starting Microsoft Exchange restore...

Logging on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server, please wait...

Beginning dbcopy restore of storage group sg3.sg3 <07/19/2002 10:25:26>,
1 of 1, to sg3.sg3
Full: 1  Read: 10511010  Written: 10511010  Rate: 4,015.91 Kb/Sec
Restore of sg3.sg3 completed successfully.

Total backups inspected: 1
Total backups requested for restore: 1
Total backups restored: 1

Throughput rate: 1,024.52 Kb/Sec
Total bytes transferred: 10,511,010
Elapsed processing time: 10.02 Secs

Example 3: The tdpexcc restore stg2 full /backupdestination=tsm
/backumethod=vs command restores a full VSS Backup of Exchange Server 2003
storage group stg2 from Tivoli Storage Manager server storage to local shadow
volumes. An example of the output is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Connecting to TSM Server as node 'SVC_TDP'...

Connecting to Local DSM Agent 'svc_ba'...

Beginning VSS restore of 'stg2'...

Files Examined/Completed/Failed: [ 14 / 14 / 0 ]  Total Bytes: 88135694

VSS Restore operation completed with rc = 0
Files Examined : 14
Files Completed : 14
Files Failed : 0
Total Bytes : 88135694

Example 4: The tdpexcc restore stg4 full /backupdestination=local
/backumethod=vs command restores a full VSS Backup of Exchange Server 2003
storage group stg4 from local shadow volumes. An example of the output is
displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Connecting to TSM Server as node 'TDP_REAL'...
Connecting to Local DSM Agent 'ba_real'...
Starting Microsoft Exchange restore...
Beginning VSS restore of 'stg4'...

VSS Restore operation completed with rc = 0
Files Examined : 7
Files Completed : 7
Files Failed : 0
Total Bytes : 0
RESTOREFILES

Use this command to restore the .edb, .stm, and .log files from a specified Data Protection for Exchange backup (that resides on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage) into a specified directory. Note the following information about this command:

- This command applies to Legacy backups only. It does not apply to VSS Backups.
- The restore operation will fail if previous restore files exist.
- This command does not restore the data to the Exchange Server.
- This command does not require an Exchange Server to be installed on or accessible from the machine where the restorefiles command is issued. As a result, files can be restored to an alternative machine or to an alternative directory on the same machine as the Exchange Server.
- This command also restores Key Management Service (KMS) files and Site Replication Service (SRS) files. Use the /excapplication parameter when restoring these files.
- When restoring files from an inactive backup or an active incremental backup, use the /object parameter to specify the name of the backup object. The object name uniquely identifies the backup instance in Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. A list of backup object names is obtained by issuing the query tsm command.
- This command is only available on the command line interface. It is not available in the Data Protection for Exchange GUI.

Data Protection for Exchange supports the following types of restores using the restorefiles command:

Full     Restore the files from a Full type backup.
Copy    Restore the files from a Copy type backup.
Incremental     Restore the files from an Incremental type backup.
Differential     Restore the files from a Differential type backup.
Database copy     Restore the files from a Database Copy type backup.

Syntax

```
 TDPEXCC—RESTOREFILES sg-name,sg-nameN FULL
     COPY
     INCREMENTAL
     DIFFERENTIAL
     DBCopy db-name

 /BUFFers=numbuffers
 /BUFFERSize=buffersize
```
Positional Parameters
The following positional parameters specify the object to restore:

* | `sg-name`
  * | `sg-name`
    | Restore all storage group files sequentially.
    | `sg-name` | Restore the specified storage group files. Multiple entries are
    |               | separated by commas. If any storage group contains commas or
    |               | blanks, enclose the storage group name in quotes.

The following positional parameters specify the type of backup from which the
files are restored:

**FULL** | **COPY** | **INCRemental** | **DIFFerential** | **DBCopy** **db-name**

**FULL** | Restore the files from a Full type backup.
**COPY**  | Restore the files from a Copy type backup.
**INCRemental** | Restore the files from an Incremental type backup.
**DIFFerential** | Restore the files from a Differential type backup.
**DBCopy** **db-name** | Restore the files from the **db-name** database copy backup.
Optional Parameters

/BUFFers=numbuffers
Use the /buffers parameter to specify the number of data buffers used for retrieving data from the Tivoli Storage Manager API.

The numbuffers variable refers to the number of data buffers to use. The number of data buffers can be from 2 to 8. The default number of data buffers is 3.

/BUFFersSize=buffersize
Use the /buffersize parameter to specify the size of data buffers used to retrieve data from the Tivoli Storage Manager API.

The buffersize variable refers to the size of the data buffers in kilobytes. The size of the data buffers can be from 64 to 8192 kilobytes. The default size of the data buffers is 1024 kilobytes.

/CONFIGfile=configfilename
Use the /configfile parameter to specify the name of the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file that contains the values for the Data Protection for Exchange configuration options. See “SET” on page 100 for details about the contents of the file.

The configfilename variable can include a fully qualified path. If the configfilename variable does not include a path, the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory is used.

Considerations
• If the configfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /configfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:
  /CONFIGfile="c:\Program Files\File.cfg"
• If the /configfile parameter is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.
• If the /configfile parameter is specified but the configfilename variable is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.

/EXCAPPlication=KMS | SRS
Use the /exccapplication parameter to specify the name of the KMS database or SRS database from which files will be restored.

You can specify:
KMS The Key Management Service database files are restored.
SRS The Site Replication Service database files are restored.

If no value is specified, Data Protection for Exchange restores the Information Store database files.

/FROMEXCSERVER=server-name
Use the /fromexcseserver parameter to specify the name of the Exchange Server where the original backup was performed. The default is the local machine name.

/INTO=pathname
Use the /into parameter to specify the root directory where files are to be restored. The restorefiles operation creates a subdirectory under the root directory that contains the name of the storage group. Restored files are placed in that subdirectory. If the /into parameter is not specified, the files will be restored into directory from which the restorefiles command is issued. For example, if Data Protection for Exchange is installed in the c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPEXchange directory and the following:

92 IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail: Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server Installation and User's Guide
command is issued from the E:\Some\dir location: e:\Some\dir>
c:\"Program Files\"Tivoli\TSM\TDPEXchange\dpxecc restorefiles
ThirdSG full, then the files are restored to the subdirectories in the
e:\Some\dir location:
e:\Some\dir\ThirdSG\DB3_1.edb
e:\Some\dir\ThirdSG\DB3_1.stm
e:\Some\dir\ThirdSG\E0200001.log

/LOGFile=logfile
Use the /logfile parameter to specify the name of the activity log file
generated by Data Protection for Exchange.
The logfile name identifies the name of the activity log file.
If the specified log file does not exist, a new log file is created. If the
specified log file exists, new log entries are appended to the file. The
logfile name can include a fully-qualified path. However, if no path
is specified, the log file is written to the Data Protection for Exchange
installation directory.
If the logfile name includes spaces, the entire /logfile parameter
entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:
/LOGFile="c:\Program Files\mydpxexchange.log"

If the /logfile parameter is not specified, log records are written to the
default log file, tdpexc.log.
The /logfile parameter cannot be turned off. You always get logging.

When using multiple simultaneous instances of Data Protection for
Exchange to perform operations, use the /logfile parameter to specify a
different log file for each instance used. This directs logging for each
instance to a different log file and prevents interspersed log file records.
Failure to specify a different log file for each instance can result in
unreadable log files.

/LOGPrune=numdays | No
Use the /logprune parameter to disable log pruning or to explicitly request
a prune of the log for one command run. By default, log pruning is
enabled and performed once per day. The numdays variable represents the
number of days to save log entries. By default, 60 days of log entries are
saved in the prune process. You can use the Data Protection for Exchange
GUI or the set command to change the defaults so that log pruning is
disabled, or so that more or less days of log entries are saved. The
command line user may use the /logprune parameter to override these
defaults for one command run. Note that when the value of the /logprune
variable numdays is a number in the range 0 to 9999, a prune is performed
even if one has already been performed for the day.
Changes to the value of the timeformat or dateformat parameter can result
in an undesired pruning of the Data Protection for Exchange log file. If you
are running a command that may prune the log file and the value of the
timeformat or dateformat parameter has changed, perform one of the
following to prevent undesired pruning of the log file:
• Make a copy of the existing log file.
• Specify a new log file with the /logfile parameter or logfile setting.

/MOUNTWait=Yes | No
If the Tivoli Storage Manager server is configured to store the backup data
on removable media (such as tapes), then it is possible that the Tivoli Storage Manager server might indicate to Data Protection for Exchange that it is waiting for a required storage volume to be mounted. If that occurs, this parameter allows you to specify whether Data Protection for Exchange should wait for the media mount or stop the current operation.

You can specify:

**Yes**  Wait for tape mounts. This is the default.

**No**  Do not wait for tape mounts.

/OBJECT=object-name

Use the /object parameter to specify the name of the backup object files you want to restore. The object name uniquely identifies each backup object and is created by Data Protection for Exchange.

Use the Data Protection for Exchange query tsm command to view the names of the backup objects.

If the tdpxcc restore sname incr command is entered (without the /object parameter), all multiple active incremental backup files are restored sequentially. The /object parameter is used to restore files from only one incremental backup at a time.

/PARTial=dbname1,dbnameN

Use the /partial parameter to specify that only files from the named databases (dbname1,dbnameN) within the full or copy backup should be restored into the alternative directory.

**Considerations**

- If you specify the /partial parameter, you must include at least one valid database name.
- If you do not specify the /partial parameter, all files within the backup are restored.

/Quiet  This parameter prevents status information from being displayed. This does not affect the level of information written to the activity log.

/TSMNODE=tsmnodename

The tsmnodename variable refers to the Tivoli Storage Manager node name Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. You can also store the node name in the Tivoli Storage Manager options file. The command line parameter overrides the value in the Tivoli Storage Manager options file if PASSWORDACCESS is set to PROMPT. This parameter is not valid when PASSWORDACCESS is set to GENERATE.

/TSMOPTFile=tsmoptfilename

The tsmoptfilename variable identifies the Data Protection for Exchange options file.

The file name can include a fully qualified path name. If no path is specified, the directory where Data Protection for Exchange is installed is searched.

If the tsmoptfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /tsmoptfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:

/TSMOPTFile="c:\Program Files\file.opt"

The default is dsm.opt.
/TSMPassword=tsmpassword

The tsmpassword variable refers to the Tivoli Storage Manager password. Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. If you specified PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE in the Data Protection for Exchange options file, then the password need not be provided here because the one stored in the registry is used. However, in order to store the password in the registry, you must specify the Tivoli Storage Manager password the first time Data Protection for Exchange connects to the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

If you do specify a password on the command line when PASSWORDACCESS GENERATE is in effect, then the command line value is ignored unless the password for this node has not yet been stored in the registry. In that case, the specified password is the one that is stored in the registry and used for the current command execution.

If PASSWORDACCESS PROMPT is in effect, and a password value is not specified on the command line, then you are prompted for a password.

The Tivoli Storage Manager password Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server can be up to 63 characters in length.

Examples

Example 1: This command, tdpexcc restorefiles Finance COPY /INTO=e:\test
/FROMEXCSERVER=excsrv12 /TSMNODE=excsrv12
/TSMPASSWORD=password, restores backup files from a COPY type backup of the Finance storage group (from the Exchange Server 2003 named excsrv12) into the e:\test directory. The restored files are:

- e:\test\Finance\E0000011.log
- e:\test\Finance\E0000012.log
- e:\test\Finance\MB1.edb
- e:\test\Finance\MB1.stm
- e:\test\Finance\MB2.edb
- e:\test\Finance\MB2.stm
- e:\test\Finance\MB3.edb
- e:\test\Finance\MB3.stm

Example 2: This command, tdpexcc restorefiles FSG FULL /PARTIAL=Mailbox2 /INTO=e:\test /FROMEXCSERVER=excsrv05 /TSMNODE=excsrv05
/TSMPASSWORD=password, restores Mailbox2 backup files from a FULL type backup of the FSG storage group (from the Exchange 2000 Server named excsrv05) into the e:\test directory. The restored files are:

- e:\test\FSG\E0000029.log
- e:\test\FSG\E000002A.log
- e:\test\FSG\Mailbox2.edb
- e:\test\FSG\Mailbox2.stm
Example 3:  First, this command, \texttt{tdpexcc q tsm * /all} \\
\texttt{/FROMEXCSERVER=EXCH1}, queries the Tivoli Storage Manager server for all 
active and inactive backups that were originally backed up from the Exchange 
Server named \textit{EXCH1}. The command displays the following backup objects:

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail: 
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server 
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0 
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Querying Tivoli Storage Manager server for a list of database 
backups, please wait...

```
Backup List 
----------
Exchange Server : EXCH1
Storage Group : Second Storage Group
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Backup Date</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>S Fmt</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Loc</th>
<th>Object Name/Database Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>02/14/2006 14:01:19</td>
<td>2,940.06MB</td>
<td>A Lgcy full</td>
<td>Srv</td>
<td>mailbox_jie</td>
<td>20060214140119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,003.02MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mailbox_jie</td>
<td>Second Mail Store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>924.02MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Second Mail Store</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8,212.39KB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Second Public Store</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5,120.09KB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02/14/2006 14:24:59</td>
<td>2,950.05MB</td>
<td>A VSS full</td>
<td>Loc</td>
<td>mailbox_jie</td>
<td>20060214142459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.01MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Logs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8,208.00KB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Second Public Store</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>924.02MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Second Mail Store</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,003.02MB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mailbox_jie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Second, this command, \texttt{tdpexcc restorefiles "Second Storage Group" FULL} \\
\texttt{/OBJECT=20060214140119 /INTO=c:\test /FROMEXCSERVER=EXCH1} \\
\texttt{/TSMNODE=tdp_geo /TSMPASSWORD=password}, restores backup files of 
\texttt{02/14/2006 14:01:19 FULL} type backup of the storage group \textit{Second Storage Group} 
(from the Exchange Server 2003 named \textit{EXCH1}) into the \texttt{c:test} directory.

The command displays the following output:

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail: 
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server 
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0 
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Starting Microsoft Exchange restore... 
Logging on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server, please wait...

Beginning full restore of storage group Second Storage Group <02/14/2006 14:01:19>, 
1 of 1, to Second Storage Group 
Full: 2 Read: 2327880532 Written: 2325783380 Rate: 2,475.62 Kb/Sec 
Waiting for TSM server... 
Full: 0 Read: 0 Written: 0 Rate: 0 Kb/Sec 
Restore of Second Storage Group completed successfully.

Total backups inspected: 1
Total backups requested for restore: 1
Total backups restored: 1
Throughput rate: 2,475.36 Kb/Sec
Total bytes transferred: 3,082,876,092
Elapsed processing time: 1,216.24 Secs
Preference Commands

**CHANGETSMPASSWORD**

Use this command to change the Tivoli Storage Manager password used by Data Protection for Exchange to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. If you do not enter the old and new passwords, Data Protection for Exchange prompts you for the old and new passwords. Data Protection for Exchange does not display the password on the screen.

The Tivoli Storage Manager password Data Protection for Exchange uses to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server can be up to 63 characters in length.

**Syntax**

```
[TDPEXCC] CHANGETSMPassword oldpassword newpassword verifypassword
```

```
/CONFIGfile= configfilename /LOGFile= logfilename
```

```
/LOGPrune= numdays /SKIPINTEGRITYCHECK
```

```
/TSMNODE= tsmnodename /TSMOPTFile= tsmoptfilename
```

**Positional Parameters**

The following positional parameters specify required password information:

```
oldpassword newpassword verifypassword
```

  **oldpassword**

  Specifies the current password used by Data Protection for Exchange.

  **newpassword**

  Specifies the new password used by Data Protection for Exchange.

  **verifypassword**

  Specifies the new password again for verification.

If any of these values are not entered during a command invocation, you are prompted for them.

**Optional Parameters**

```
/CONFIGfile= configfilename
```

Use the /configfile parameter to specify the name of the Data Protection
for Exchange configuration file that contains the values for the Data Protection for Exchange configuration options. See “SET” on page 100 for details about the contents of the file.

The configfilename variable can include a fully qualified path. If the configfilename variable does not include a path, the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory is used.

Considerations
- If the configfilename variable includes spaces, the entire /configfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:
  /CONFIGfile="c:\Program Files\file.cfg"
- If the /configfile parameter is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.
- If the /configfile parameter is specified but the configfilename variable is not specified, the default value is tdpexc.cfg.

/LOGFile=logfile
Use the /logfile parameter to specify the name of the activity log file generated by Data Protection for Exchange.

The logfile variable identifies the name of the activity log file.

If the specified log file does not exist, a new log file is created. If the specified log file exists, new log entries are appended to the file. The logfile variable can include a fully-qualified path. However, if no path is specified, the log file is written to the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory.

If the logfile variable includes spaces, the entire /logfile parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:
/LOGFile="c:\Program Files\mytdpexchange.log"

If the /logfile parameter is not specified, log records are written to the default log file, tdpexc.log.

The /logfile parameter cannot be turned off. You always get logging.

When using multiple simultaneous instances of Data Protection for Exchange to perform operations, use the /logfile parameter to specify a different log file for each instance used. This directs logging for each instance to a different log file and prevents interspersed log file records. Failure to specify a different log file for each instance can result in unreadable log files.

/LOGPrune=numdays

Use the /logprune parameter to disable log pruning or to explicitly request a prune of the log for one command run. By default, log pruning is enabled and performed once per day. The numdays variable represents the number of days to save log entries. By default, 60 days of log entries are saved in the prune process. You can use the Data Protection for Exchange GUI or the set command to change the defaults so that log pruning is disabled, or so that more or less days of log entries are saved. The command line user may use the /logprune parameter to override these defaults for one command run. Note that when the value of the /logprune variable numdays is a number in the range 0 to 9999, a prune is performed even if one has already been performed for the day.
Changes to the value of the `timeformat` or `dateformat` parameter can result in an undesired pruning of the Data Protection for Exchange log file. If you are running a command that may prune the log file and the value of the `timeformat` or `dateformat` parameter has changed, perform one of the following to prevent undesired pruning of the log file:

- Make a copy of the existing log file.
- Specify a new log file with the `/logfile` parameter or `logfile` setting.

```
/TSMNODE=tsmnodename
```

The `tsmnodename` variable refers to the Tivoli Storage Manager node name. Data Protection for Exchange uses this to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. You can also store the node name in the Tivoli Storage Manager options file. The command line parameter overrides the value in the Tivoli Storage Manager options file if `PASSWORDACCESS` is set to `PROMPT`. This parameter is not valid when `PASSWORDACCESS` is set to `GENERATE`.

```
/TSMOPTFile=tsmoptfilename
```

The `tsmoptfilename` variable identifies the Data Protection for Exchange options file.

The file name can include a fully qualified path name. If no path is specified, the directory where Data Protection for Exchange is installed is searched.

If the `tsmoptfilename` variable includes spaces, the entire `/tsmoptfile` parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:

```
/TSMOPTFile="c:\Program Files\file.opt"
```

The default is `dsm.opt`.

**Example**

The `tdpexcc changetsmpassword oldpw newpw newpw` command changes the Tivoli Storage Manager password used by Data Protection for Exchange. An example of the output is displayed below.

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

ACN0260I Password successfully changed.
SET

Use this command to set the Data Protection for Exchange configuration parameters defined in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file, tdpexc.cfg by default.

The value of a configuration parameter specified on a command line invocation overrides (but does not change) the value of the configuration parameter specified in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file.

During a command line invocation that does not specify an overriding value for a configuration file parameter, the values in the default Data Protection for Exchange configuration file (tdpexc.cfg) are used.

Syntax

```
TDPEXCC SET BACKUPDESTINATION=TSM|LOCAL|BOTH
```

Positional Parameters

The following positional parameters specify the values in the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file. You can set only one value for each tdpexc set command run:

**BACKUPDESTination=TSM | LOCAL | BOTH**

Use the BACKUPDESTINATION positional parameter to specify the storage location for your backup. You can specify:

- **TSM** The backup is stored on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage only. This is the default.
- **LOCAL** The backup is stored on local shadow volumes only.
- **BOTH** The backup is stored on both Tivoli Storage Manager server storage and local shadow volumes.

**BACKUPMETHOD=Legacy | VSS**

Use the BACKUPMETHOD positional parameter to specify the method for your backup. You can specify:

- **LEGACY** Data Protection for Exchange uses the legacy API to perform the backup. This is the default.
VSS  Data Protection for Exchange uses VSS to perform the backup.

BUFFers=\textit{numbuffers}
Use the \textit{BUFFers} positional parameter to specify the number of data buffers used for moving data between the Exchange Server and the Tivoli Storage Manager API. Increasing the number of data buffers can improve throughput. You can specify a value of 2 through 8 in the \textit{numbuffers} value.

BUFFERSIze=\textit{buffersize}
Use the \textit{BUFFERSIze} positional parameter to specify the size of data buffers used to move data between the Exchange Server and the Tivoli Storage Manager API.

The \textit{buffersize} variable refers to the size of the data buffers in kilobytes. The size of the data buffers can be from 64 to 8192 kilobytes. The default size of the data buffers is 1024 kilobytes.

DATEformat=\textit{dateformatnum}
Use the \textit{DATEformat} positional parameter to select the format you want to use to display dates.

The \textit{dateformatnum} variable displays the date in one of the following formats. Select the format number that corresponds to the format you want to use.

1  MM/DD/YYYY. This is the default.
2  DD-MM-YYYY.
3  YYYY-MM-DD.
4  DD.MM.YYYY.
5  YYYY.MM.DD.

Changes to the value of the \textit{dateformat} parameter can result in an undesired pruning of the Data Protection for Exchange log file (tdpexc.log by default). You can avoid losing existing log file data by performing one of the following:

- After changing the value of the \textit{dateformat} parameter, make a copy of the existing log file before running Data Protection for Exchange.
- Specify a new log file with the /logfile parameter.

LANGuage=\textit{language}
Specify the three-character code of the language you want to use to display messages:

CHS  Simplified Chinese
CHT  Traditional Chinese
DEU  Standard German
ENU  American English (This is the default.)
ESP  Standard Spanish
FRA  Standard French
ITA  Standard Italian
JPN  Japanese
KOR  Korean
PTB  Brazilian Portuguese

LOCALDSMAgentnode=\textit{nodename}
Specify the node name of the local machine that performs the VSS backups. This positional parameter must be specified for VSS operations to be performed.
LOGFile=logfilename

Use the LOGFile positional parameter to specify the name of the activity log file generated by Data Protection for Exchange. The Data Protection for Exchange activity log records significant events, such as completed commands and error messages.

The logfilename variable identifies the name of the activity log file. If the specified log file does not exist, a new log file is created. If the specified log file exists, new log entries are appended to the file. The logfilename variable can include a fully-qualified path. However, if no path is specified, the log file is assigned to the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory.

LOGPrune=numdays|No

Use the LOGPrune positional parameter to disable log pruning or to set log pruning parameters. By default, log pruning is enabled and performed once per day. The numdays variable represents the number of days to save log entries. You can specify a value of No or 0 through 9999. By default, 60 days of log entries are saved in the prune process.

MOUNTWait=Yes|No

Use the MOUNTWait positional parameter to specify whether Data Protection for Exchange should wait for removable media to mount (such as tapes or CD-ROMs) or to stop the current operation. This situation occurs when the Tivoli Storage Manager server is configured to store backup data on removable media and waits for a required storage volume to be mounted.

Specify Yes for Data Protection for Exchange to wait until all initial volumes of any required removable media are made available to the Tivoli Storage Manager server before completing the command.

Specify No for Data Protection for Exchange to terminate the command (if removable media are required). An error message will display.

NUMBERformat=fmtnum

Use the NUMBERformat positional parameter to specify the format you want to use to display numbers.

The fmtnum variable displays numbers using one of the following formats. Select the format number that corresponds to the format you want to use.

1 n,nnn,dd. This is the default.
2 n,nnn,dd.
3 n nnn,dd
4 n nnn,dd
5 n.nnn,dd
6 n’nnn,dd

REMOVEDSMAgentnode=nodename

Specify the node name of the machine that moves the VSS data to Tivoli Storage Manager server storage during off-loaded backups.

TEMPLOGRESTorepath=path-name

Use the TEMPLOGRESTorepath positional parameter to specify the default temporary path to use when restoring logs and patch files. For best performance, the path specified in the path-name should be on a different physical device than the current active logger. If the path-name variable
includes spaces, the entire TEMPLOGRESTorepath positional parameter entry must be placed in double quotes. For example:
"TEMPLOGRESTorepath="c:\Program Files\file.log"

**Note:** Do not specify double-byte characters (DBCS) within the temporary log path. This is not supported by Data Protection for Exchange or Microsoft.

**TIMEformat=** *formatnumber*

Use the **TIMEformat** positional parameter to specify the format in which you want system time displayed.

The *formatnumber* variable displays time in one of the following formats. Select the format number that corresponds to the format you want to use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format Number</th>
<th>Time Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>HH:MM:SS This is the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>HH,MM,SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HH.MM.SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>HH:MM:SSA/P</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Parameters**

**/CONFIGfile=** *configfilename*

Use the **/configfile** parameter to specify the name of the Data Protection for Exchange configuration file in which these values will be set.

The *configfilename* variable can include a fully qualified path. If the *configfilename* variable does not include a path, the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory is used.

**Considerations**

- If the *configfilename* variable includes spaces, the entire **/configfile** parameter entry must be placed in double quotes.
- If the **/configfile** parameter is not specified, the default value is *tdpexc.cfg*.
- If the **/configfile** parameter is specified but the *configfilename* variable is not specified, the default value is *tdpexc.cfg*.

**Example**

The `tdpexc set logfile=d:\tsm\tdpexchange\exchange.log` command specifies `exchange.log`, in the `d:\tsm\tdpexchange` directory, as the Data Protection for Exchange log file instead of the default Data Protection for Exchange log file, `tdpexc.log`, located in the directory where Data Protection for Exchange is installed. An example of the output is displayed below.
TDPEXCC HELP

Use this command to display help for Data Protection for Exchange commands. This command lists one or more commands and their parameters.

Syntax

```
TDPEXCC ? command [ subcommand ]
```

Optional Parameters

The following optional parameters specify the help to be displayed:

* | command

Identifies the specific Data Protection for Exchange command that is to be displayed. If the wildcard character (*) is used, help for all Data Protection for Exchange commands is displayed.

The valid command names are shown below:

- BACKup
- CHANGETSMPassword
- HELP
- Query
- RESTore
- RESTOREFiles
- SET

* | subcommand

Help can be displayed for commands that have several subcommands, for example, the query command. If you do not specify a subcommand or the wildcard character (*), help for all Data Protection for Exchange query commands is displayed.

The valid subcommand names for the query command are shown below:

- EXCHange
- TDP
- TSM

Examples

**Example 1:** The tdpexc help command displays available help for Data Protection for Exchange. The following output is displayed:

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

Choose from the following commands:

TDPEXCC BACKup * | sgname1,...,sgnameN backuptype
  where backuptype can be:
  - FULL
  - COPY
  - INCREMENTAL
  - DIFFERENTIAL
  - DBCopy
  - dbname
  - [BACKUPDESTination=TSM|LOCAL|BOTH] (default: TSM)
  - [BACKUPMETHOD=LEGACY|VSS] (default: LEGACY)
  - [BUFFERS=numbuffers] (default: 3)
  - [BUFFERSIZE=buffersize] (default: 1024)
  - [CONFIGfile=tdpexc.cfg|filename] (default: tdpexc.cfg)
  - [EXCAPPLICATION=KMS|SRS] (default: Information Store)
  - [EXCSErver=servername] (default: local exchange server)
  - [LOGFile=tdpexc.log|logfilename] (default: tdpexc.log)
Chapter 5. Using the Command Line Interface 105

TDPEXCC CHANGETSMPassword [oldpw [newpw [verifypw]]]

Valid command names:  Valid subcommands:
BACKup                        EXCHange
CHANGETSMPassword             TDP
HELP                          TSM
Query
RESTore
RESTOREFiles
SET

TDPEXCC Query EXCHange

TDPEXCC Query TDP

TDPEXCC Query TSM [sgname1,...,sgnameN [backuptype]]
where backuptype can be:
FULL|COPY|INCRemental|DIFFerential|DBCopy dbname

TDPEXCC RESTore *sgname1,...,sgnameN backuptype
where backuptype can be:
FULL|COPY|INCRemental|DIFFerential|DBCopy dbname

Chapter 5. Using the Command Line Interface 105
TDPEXCC RESTOREFiles *\sgname1,...,sgnameN backuptype
where backuptype can be:
    FULL|COPY|INCREMENTAL|DIFFERENTIAL|DBCopy dbname

BUFFers=numbuffers   (default: 3)
BUFFERSize=buffersize (default: 1024)
XMLFile=tdpexc.cfg|filename (default: tdpexc.cfg)
EXCAPPlication=KMS|SRS (default: Information Store)
FROMEXCSERVER=servername (default: local exchange server)
INTO=path   (default: current path)
LOGFile=tdpexc.log|logfilename (default: tdpexc.log)
LOGPrune=60|n|No (default: 60)
MOUNTWait=Yes|No (default: Yes)
OBJECT=object   (default: current active object)
PARTial=dbname1,...,dbnameN (default: NONE)
Quiet
TSMNODE=nodename
TSMOPTFile=dsm.opt|filename (default: dsm.opt)
TSMPassword=password

TDPEXCC SET PARMname=value

where PARMname and default values are:
BACKUPDESTination=TSM|LOCAL|BOTH
BACKUPMETHod=LEGACY|VSS
BUFFers=3 (2..8)
BUFFERSize=1024 (64..8192)
DATEformat=
    1 MM/DD/YYYY
    2 DD-MM-YYYY
    3 YYYY-MM-DD
    4 DD.MM.YYYY
    5 YYYY.MM.DD
LANGUAGE=3-letter country code
    ENU American English
    PTB Brazilian Portuguese
    CHS Chinese, Simplified
    CHT Chinese, Traditional
    FRA Standard French
    DEU Standard German
    ITA Standard Italian
    JPN Japanese
    KOR Korean
    ESP Standard Spanish
LOCALDSMAGENTNODE=nodename
LOGFile=tdpexc.log (filename)
LOGPrune=60 (0..9999) | No
MOUNTWait=Yes (Yes|No)
NUMBERformat=
    1 n,nnn.dd
    2 n,nnn.dd
    3 n nnn,dd
    4 n nnn,dd
    5 n nnn,dd
    6 n'nnn,dd
REMOTEDSMAGENTNODE=nodename
TEMPLOGRESTorepath=path (pathname)
TIMEformat=
    1 HH:MM:SS
EXAMPLES:

TDPEXCC Backup "Storage Group 1" full
TDPEXCC Query TSM

Example 2: The tdpxcc help query command displays available help for Data Protection for Exchange query commands. The following output is displayed:

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail:
Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server
Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation 1998, 2006. All rights reserved.

TDPEXCC Query EXCHANGE
[ CONFIGfile=tdpxcc.cfg|filename ] (default: tdpxcc.cfg)
[ EXCSERVER=servername ] (default: local exchange server)
[ LOGFile=tdpxcc.log|logfilename ] (default: tdpxcc.log)
[ LOGPrune=60|n|No ] (default: 60)

TDPEXCC Query TDP
[ CONFIGfile=tdpxcc.cfg|filename ] (default: tdpxcc.cfg)
[ LOGFile=tdpxcc.log|logfilename ] (default: tdpxcc.log)
[ LOGPrune=60|n|No ] (default: 60)

TDPEXCC Query TSM [*|sgname1,...,sgnameN [backuptype]]
where backuptype can be:
  FULL|COPY|INCREMENTAL|DIFFERENTIAL|DBCopy dbname
  [/ACTIVE]
  [/ALL]
[ CONFIGfile=tdpxcc.cfg|filename ] (default: tdpxcc.cfg)
[ FROMEXCSERVER=servername ] (default: local exchange server)
[ LOGFile=tdpxcc.log|logfilename ] (default: tdpxcc.log)
[ LOGPrune=60|n|No ] (default: 60)
[ TSMNODE=nodename]
[ TSMOPTFile=dsm.opt|filename ] (default: dsm.opt)
[ TSMPassword=password]
Chapter 6. Quick start guide

Note: This Quick start guide applies to Legacy backups only. If you plan to perform VSS operations, you must follow configuration instructions provided in Chapter 3, “Configuring Data Protection for Exchange,” on page 25.

This section provides instructions on how to perform a quick install, configuration, and Legacy back up of a storage group using the Data Protection for Exchange GUI on a Windows 2000 Server workstation running Exchange Server 2000. It minimizes set up time and allows you to proceed quickly to a state where you can begin backing up your Exchange storage group(s). See Chapter 3, “Configuring Data Protection for Exchange,” on page 25 for detailed instructions on how to customize Data Protection for Exchange for your environment and processing needs.

1. Install Data Protection for Exchange from an account that has Domain Administrator privileges on the local system.
   - Detailed installation instructions are available in “Installation procedure” on page 21.

2. In the Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPExchange directory, edit this dsm.opt file with the following options:
   - nodename: Specify the nodename of the machine where Data Protection for Exchange is installed. This is the unique name by which the Tivoli Storage Manager server recognizes your machine.
   - tcpserveraddress: Specify the TCP/IP address of the Tivoli Storage Manager server to which you will back up your Exchange databases. You can specify the address as a domain name (server.xyz.company.com) or a dot address (10.100.23.5).

3. Launch the Data Protection for Exchange GUI by selecting Start–>Programs–>Tivoli Storage Manager–>Data Protection for Exchange–>Exchange Client GUI. By default, the Backup window displays and Legacy Backup is selected as the backup method.

4. Select the Exchange storage group(s) you want to back up in the Exchange Server tree by clicking on the box next to the desired storage group(s).

5. Select Full in the Backup Type drop-down menu of the Backup window.

6. Click the Backup button to start the backup process. Enter the Tivoli Storage Manager password provided by your Tivoli Storage Manager administrator when prompted. A Backup Progress panel displays that shows the progress of your backup.

7. When the backup is complete, click the OK button to return to the Backup window.

8. Exit the GUI by selecting File–>Exit in the Menu bar.

At this point, Data Protection for Exchange is installed, configured, and has performed the initial full backup of the selected storage group(s). Review the rest of this publication to become familiar with Data Protection for Exchange features, policies, procedures, and backup strategies, including VSS operations.
Chapter 7. Frequently asked questions

This section contains information on frequently asked questions regarding Data Protection for Exchange.

Why can I not perform VSS operations?
The IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module must be installed. See “Software and operating system” on page 20 for detailed information.

Why can I not perform VSS Instant Restore even though I have SAN Volume Controller?
The IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Hardware Devices Snapshot Integration Module must be installed. See “Software and operating system” on page 20 for detailed information.

How can I use VSS and Legacy backups together in a common backup strategy? See “Using VSS and Legacy Backups together” on page 12 and “Back up to Tivoli Storage Manager storage versus back up to local shadow volumes” on page 26 for detailed information.

Can I restore Legacy backups and VSS Backups together?
No, Legacy backups and VSS Backups cannot be mixed due to a Microsoft limitation. See “Using VSS and Legacy Backups together“ on page 12 for more information.

Are VSS Restores restored into the Recovery Storage Group?
No, VSS Restores ignore the Recovery Storage Group and are placed directly into the production database. This is a Microsoft limitation. See “VSS restore considerations” on page 52 for more information.

Why are all my databases dismounted when I perform a VSS Restore?
All databases are dismounted during VSS Restore processing due to a Microsoft requirement.

How does VSS Instant Restore work?
VSS Instant Restore is a volume-level hardware-assisted copy where target volumes (that contain the snapshot) are copied back to the original source volumes. SAN Volume Controller is required to perform VSS Instant Restores. See “VSS Instant Restore” on page 10 for more information.

Why can I not use VSS Instant Restore?
You cannot use VSS Instant Restore because the backups are not being managed by a SAN Volume Controller hardware provider. See “VSS Instant Restore” on page 10 for more information.

Now that I am performing VSS operations, why are there so many active backups?
Tivoli Storage Manager policy manages VSS Backups residing on local shadow volumes and on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage. This allows for different policies which can lead to an increase in the number of active backups. See “How Tivoli Storage Manager server policy affects Data Protection for Exchange” on page 13 and “Back up to Tivoli Storage Manager storage versus back up to local shadow volumes” on page 26 for more information.
Can I use dynamic disks with VSS operations?
No, dynamic disks are not allowed with VSS operations. Disks that contain Exchange data must be configured as basic if a hardware provider is used.

How do I perform mailbox level backup and restore for Exchange?
See BRICKBACK.DOC in the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory. BRICKBACK.DOC explains how to use the Microsoft ExMerge utility and the Tivoli Storage Manager Backup-Archive Client to perform an item level backup and restore. Data Protection for Exchange is not involved with that solution.


How should I set up my policy settings for Data Protection for Exchange?
See the following sections for information about Data Protection for Exchange policy settings:
- “How Tivoli Storage Manager server policy affects Data Protection for Exchange” on page 13
- “Specifying Data Protection for Exchange options” on page 31

How do I perform an alternate server restore?
See Appendix C, “Advanced restore procedures,” on page 129 for information about performing this procedure.

What should my Data Protection for Exchange performance settings be?
The default value of the buffers parameter (3) and the buffersize parameter (1024) have demonstrated the best performance in testing. However, environment factors such as network speed, physical database layout, machine resources, and Exchange Server resources all affect Data Protection for Exchange performance and should be considered when determining your settings. Note that the buffers and buffersize parameters apply to Legacy backups only.

See the following sections for more information:
- “Performance” on page 15
- “Specifying Data Protection for Exchange options” on page 31
- “/buffers and /buffersize parameters” (with the backup command) on page 72.
- “/buffers and /buffersize parameters” (with the restore command) on page 82.
- “/buffers parameter” (with the set command) on page 101.
- “/buffersize parameter” (with the set command) on page 101.

Can I restore my Data Protection for Exchange Version 1 backups with later versions of Data Protection for Exchange?
No, you cannot restore Data Protection for Exchange Version 1 backups with later versions of Data Protection for Exchange (versions 2.2.0, 2.2.1, 5.1.5, 5.2.1, or 5.3.3). You must retain Data Protection for Exchange Version 1 for as long as you maintain Version 1 backups.
How do I set deleted item or deleted mailbox retention to avoid a mailbox level backup and restore?

See Appendix C, “Advanced restore procedures,” on page 129 for information related to mailbox level backup and restore.

How do I schedule Data Protection for Exchange backups?

You can schedule Data Protection for Exchange backups by using the Tivoli Storage Manager Backup-Archive client scheduler.

See the following sections for more information:

- Appendix A, “Using the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler,” on page 115
- “Backup types” on page 5
- “Backup strategies” on page 11

What should I do if I get an "unknown Exchange API error" when running Data Protection for Exchange?

See “What to do when you encounter a problem” on page 131 for more information about error messages.

How do I set up Data Protection for Exchange to run in a cluster?

The following sections contain information about using Data Protection for Exchange in a cluster environment:

- “Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) Support” on page 16
- "CLUSTERNode option" on page 32
- “Data Protection for Exchange in a MSCS environment” on page 54

Make sure the user can access the universal naming convention (UNC) share name of the directory specified by the templogrestorepath option. If that is not possible, specify a directory that has a valid share drive available and that is accessible to the user.

How do I know if my backup ran successfully?

A message displays that states the backup completed successfully. In addition, processing information is available in the following files:

- Data Protection for Exchange log file (default: tdptexc.log)
  This file indicates the date and time of a backup, data backed up, and any error messages or completion codes.
- Tivoli Storage Manager server activity log
  Data Protection for Exchange logs information on backup and restore commands to the Tivoli Storage Manager server activity log. A Tivoli Storage Manager administrator can view this log for you if you do not have a Tivoli Storage Manager administrator user ID and password.
- Tivoli Storage Manager API error log file (default: dsierro.log)

To prevent unsuccessful backups, consider the following information:

- Storage group databases in the Exchange Server Information Store must be mounted for a backup to complete successfully.
- An incremental back up of an Exchange Server database can fail if a previous full backup attempt of the same database terminated prematurely. If you receive Data Protection for Exchange errors ACN3025E or ACN4226E, perform a full backup of the database.
A backup can fail if necessary transaction logs have been deleted or truncated. An error message will display stating that log files or patch files are missing. Perform the following steps to recover from this type of backup failure:

1. Verify that only one product is performing backups on your system.
2. Perform a full backup.
3. If an error is still encountered, shut down and restart the Exchange Server, then perform a full backup.
4. If an error is still encountered, reboot the machine, then perform a full backup.

How do the Exchange Server transaction logs get deleted?
Be aware that the Exchange Server deletes transaction logs, not Data Protection for Exchange. As a result, the Exchange Server only deletes logs containing transactions that have been committed to the Exchange database. During high processing times, the Exchange Server may not delete all the transaction logs. Thus, it is possible that log files remain after the Data Protection for Exchange backup completes.

What do I do when this Tivoli Storage Manager server error displays: "ANR9999D snmode.c(xxxx): Error validating inserts etc."?
You do not have to do anything as this message can be ignored. Installing a later version of Tivoli Storage Manager server will prevent this message from being displayed.

What authority do I need to perform a Data Protection for Exchange backup and restore?
You must have local registry rights for all versions of Exchange Server.

Data Protection for Exchange must be running under an account that has Domain Administrator privileges.

Should I use the same nodename as used by my Backup-Archive client?

Legacy backups: It is recommended that you use different node names to simplify scheduling, data separation, and policy management tasks.

VSS Backups: You MUST use different node names.

See “Specifying Data Protection for Exchange options” on page 31 for more information.

How do I set up LANFree to back up Data Protection for Exchange over my SAN?
See “LAN Free” on page 15 for more information.

Can I run Data Protection for Exchange with multiple sessions backing up?
You can run separate instances of Data Protection for Exchange to back up different storage groups.

See “Backup strategies” on page 11 for more information.

Can I delete a single Data Protection for Exchange backup from the Tivoli Storage Manager server based on the date that the backup was performed?
No. It is not possible to delete a single Data Protection for Exchange backup from the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
Appendix A. Using the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler

This section demonstrates how to use the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler with Data Protection for Exchange to automate a full Legacy back up of Exchange Server storage groups. You can automate a full backup of Exchange Server storage groups as well. We recommend that you have the most current Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client installed.

For VSS operations, it is recommended that you set up different schedules to meet the policy needs that are defined for your Legacy and VSS backups.

Once Data Protection for Exchange has been registered to a Tivoli Storage Manager server and installed on the Exchange Server, the procedure involves the following steps:

1. **On the Tivoli Storage Manager server:**
   a. Define a schedule to run a Windows command file in the policy domain to which Data Protection for Exchange is registered.
   b. Associate the Data Protection for Exchange node to the defined schedule.

2. **On the machine where Data Protection for Exchange and the Exchange Server are installed:**
   a. Install the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler client as a Windows service for Data Protection for Exchange. If a scheduler already exists for the regular Tivoli Storage Manager backup-client, install another one for Data Protection for Exchange.
   b. Define a command file that contains Data Protection for Exchange commands to perform the desired backup.
   c. If you are running in a cluster server environment, install the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler as a Windows service on both cluster nodes.
   d. If you are running in a cluster server environment, create a new cluster resource that represents the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler. Verify that the cluster resource is started.
   e. Start the scheduler installed in step 2a (this is step 2.1 in some HTML browsers).

**Example Procedure**

This example assumes the following environment:

- Data Protection for Exchange is registered to a Tivoli Storage Manager server:
  - The node name is mynode.
  - The password is mypassword.
  - The policy domain is mydomain.
- The event to be scheduled:
  - A daily full Legacy backup of all storage groups.
  - The backups begin between 9:00 and 9:15 pm.
- Exchange Server 2003 is installed on a Windows 2003 system.
On the Tivoli Storage Manager server

You must set up a scheduler service on the machine where the backup-archive client is installed before performing this procedure.

1. Create a command file called c:\excfull.cmd. A sample command file (excfull.smp) is provided in the directory where Data Protection for Exchange is installed. This sample file contains commands necessary to perform a scheduled full Legacy backup of all Exchange Server storage groups to Tivoli Storage Manager storage. You must specify COMPLETE PATHNAMES in the command file for all file names and non-system commands.

   **Note:** Perform the following if you are setting up the scheduler for an Exchange Server running in a cluster environment:
   - Your command file must reside on the Exchange Server File Share. The schedule you define on the Tivoli Storage Manager server needs to match this command file. In Step 1 and Step 2, the command file c:\excfull.cmd could be x:\excfull.cmd where x is the Exchange Server File Share.
   - The `tsmoptfile` and `logfile` options specified in your command file must reflect the location of the options file and log file on the Exchange Server File Share.
   - The Exchange virtual server must be specified in the c:\excfull.cmd file. Use the `exserver` option to specify the Exchange virtual server in the command text located at the end of the c:\excfull.cmd file:

     ```
     tdpexcc backup * full /tsmoptfile=dsm.opt /logfile=excsch.log
     /exserver=virtualservername>> excfull.log
     ```

   Note that this command text is divided on two lines to accommodate page formatting.

2. Enter the following command to define the schedule. You can enter this command on the server console or from an administrative client. The administrative client does not have to be running on the same system as the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

   ```
   def sched mydomain my_schedule desc="Exchange Daily Full Legacy Backup" action=command objects="c:\excfull.cmd" priority=2 starttime=21:00 duration=15 durunits=minutes period=1 perunits=day dayofweek=any
   ```

   Note that if there is a space in the directory specified for the `object` parameter, then the directory must be enclosed in two sets of quotes. For example:

   ```
   objects="c:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPEXchange\excfull.cmd"
   ```

   Tivoli Storage Manager displays this message:

   ```
   ANR2500I Schedule MY_SCHEDULE defined in policy domain MYDOMAIN.
   ```

3. Issue the following command to associate Data Protection for Exchange to this schedule:

   ```
   define association mydomain my_schedule mynode
   ```

   Tivoli Storage Manager displays this message:

   ```
   ANR2510I Node MYNODE associated with schedule MY_SCHEDULE in policy domain MYDOMAIN.
   ```

   A schedule is now defined on the Tivoli Storage Manager server with the following attributes:
   - It runs a command file called c:\excfull.cmd.
   - It begins at 9:00 pm.
   - It is performed daily and can start on any day of the week.
You can use the Tivoli Storage Manager administrative commands **query schedule** and **query association** to confirm that the schedule and association are set correctly.

### On the Exchange Server

This section of the procedure assumes the following environment:

- The Tivoli Storage Manager Backup-Archive client is installed on the Exchange Server in the `d:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient` directory.
- Data Protection for Exchange is installed on the Exchange Server in the `d:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPExchange` directory.
- The communication options in the dsm.opt option files located in these directories point to the Tivoli Storage Manager server to which the Exchange storage groups are to be backed up.

The options file that is defined for Data Protection for Exchange is used by the scheduler when validating the node and password. The options file is also used when contacting the Tivoli Storage Manager server for schedule information.

If this message displays:

> A communications error occurred connecting to the Tivoli Storage Manager Server

Then:

1. make sure the communication options in the dsm.opt file points to the correct Tivoli Storage Manager server.
2. make sure the Tivoli Storage Manager server is running.

Perform the following steps on the Exchange Server:

1. Login using a Windows account that has administrative privileges.
2. Open a Windows command prompt window.
3. In the window, issue the following command:

   ```
   cd /d \"Program Files\"\Tivoli\TSM\baclient
   ```

   You must place quotation marks around the section of a directory pathname that contains a space (for example: `d:\"Program Files\"\Tivoli\TSM\baclient`). You can also use the short form of a pathname by placing a tilde (‘~’) and unique identifier after the first six characters in the pathname. An example of the short form of the pathname is shown below:

   ```
   d:\Progra~1\Tivoli\TSM\baclient
   ```

**Note:** If a Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler is already installed on your machine (for the regular backups of the Windows system), you need to install another scheduler (with a unique name) to run the schedules defined for Data Protection for Exchange. The Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler must have a different node name from the regular Tivoli Storage Manager backup-archive client.

4. In the window, issue the following command:

   ```
   dsmcutil inst /name:\"Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler\" /node:mynode /password:mypassword /autostart:yes /clientdir:\"d:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\" /optfile:\"d:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPExchange\dsm.opt\" /startnow:no
   ```

   The Windows ID that is used to start the scheduler service may require that you specify the client dsmcutil options `ntdomain`, `ntaccount`, and `ntpassword` in this command.
Note: If you are setting up the scheduler for an Exchange Server running in a cluster environment:

a. Change the /autostart option to no and add the /clusternode and /clustername options. For example:
   /autostart: no /clusternode: yes /clustername: your cluster name
b. Move the Exchange virtual server to the secondary node of the cluster to create the scheduler service. Make sure the secondary node of the cluster has ownership of the Exchange virtual server.

c. The primary node of the cluster must contain the command file on the file share used to create the scheduler service.

d. Copy the options file (dsm.opt in the Step 4 example) to a shared drive associated with the virtual server. For example:
   /optfile: "x:\dsm.opt"

Tivoli Storage Manager displays this output:

TSM Windows Client Service Configuration Utility
Command Line Interface - Version 5, Release 3, Level 3.0
(C) Copyright IBM Corporation, 1990, 2006, All Rights Reserved.
Last Updated May 29 2005
TSM Api Verison 5.3.3

Command: Install TSM Client Service
Machine: TDPEX1 (Local Machine)

Installing TSM Client Service:

Machine : MYNODE
Service Name : Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler
Client Directory : D:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient
Automatic Start : yes
Logon Account : LocalSystem

The service was successfully installed.

Creating Registry Keys ...
Updated registry value 'ImagePath'.
Updated registry value 'EventMessageFile'.
Updated registry value 'TypesSupported'.
Updated registry value 'Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler'.
Updated registry value 'ADSMClientKey'.
Updated registry value 'OptionsFile'.
Updated registry value 'EventLogging'.
Updated registry value 'ClientNodeName'.

Generating registry password ...
Authenticating password with Tivoli Storage Manager for node MYNODE ....

Connecting to Tivoli Storage Manager via client options file 'd:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPEXchange\dsm.opt' ...

Password authentication successful.
The Registry password for node MYNODE has been updated .

Note: If you need to make corrections after installing a service:

a. Issue the following command to remove the service:
   dsmcutil remove /name: "Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler"
b. Issue the command in Step 4 again to install a new service.

**Note:** If you are setting up the scheduler service for an Exchange Server running in a cluster environment, repeat Step 1 through Step 4 on the secondary node of the cluster. IMPORTANT! The name of the scheduler service created by the **dsmc util** command in Step 4 and the cluster service must have the same logon authority.

5. The Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler is now installed but has not started. To start the scheduler **IN A NON-CLUSTER ENVIRONMENT**, issue the following command in the Windows command prompt window:

   ```
   net start "Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler"
   ```

   This output is displayed:

   The Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler service is starting.
   The Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler service was started successfully.

   Note that because **/autostart**:yes is specified, the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler automatically starts each time the Windows system is rebooted.

**Note:** IMPORTANT!

- If you are creating the scheduler service in a non-cluster environment, proceed directly to Step 13.
- If you are creating the scheduler service in a cluster environment, perform Step 6 through Step 13.

   The newly created scheduler service is tied to a cluster group. This allows the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler to correctly fail over between the nodes and also manage automatic password changes.

6. Start the Cluster Administrator.

7. Select the Exchange Server Cluster Group and create a new Resource to represent the Data Protection for Exchange scheduler (**File-->New-->Resource**). Make sure the following parameters are specified:

   **Resource Type**
   Specify **Generic Service**.

   **Group** Specify the Exchange Virtual Server.

   **Possible Owners**
   Make sure both node machines are listed. Add them if they are not listed.

   **Resource Dependencies**
   Make sure the Exchange Virtual server and the shared drives where the options file is located are listed.

   **Generic Service-->Service Name**
   Specify the exact name of the scheduler service.

   For example:

   Name: Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler
   Description: Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler
   Resource Type: Generic Service
   Group: MARSEXCI1

   Dependencies: Microsoft Exchange Information Store Instance

   Service Name: Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler
Registry Replication: None
8. Select the new resource and modify its properties. Under the **Registry Replication** ->**Root Registry Key** parameter, add the exact key where the Data Protection for Exchange node name is listed. For example:

```
SOFTWARE\IBM\ADSM\CurrentVersion\BackupClient\NODES\<nodename>\TSM\ServerName
```

Replace `<nodename>` with your Data Protection for Exchange node name. For example:
```
SOFTWARE\IBM\ADSM\CurrentVersion\BackupClient\NODES\MYNODE\TSM\ServerName
```
9. In the Windows command prompt window, change to the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory.
10. Verify that the **clusternode** option in the dsm.opt file is set to *yes*. After this is verified, enter a command that connects with the Tivoli Storage Manager server. Specify the **/tsmpassword=yourpassword** parameter to ensure the correct password is stored in the registry. This allows the scheduler to properly connect automatically to the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

```
tdpscc query tsm /tsmpassword=mypassword
```
11. From the Cluster Administrator, select the new resource and bring it online (**File** -> **Bring Online**).
12. After the new resource is online, move the Group from the secondary node to the primary node of the cluster. Verify that the Data Protection for Exchange scheduler service on the primary node has started.
13. Your system is now ready to run the scheduled full Legacy backups of the Exchange storage groups.

## Scheduler considerations

Consider the following characteristics when defining a Tivoli Storage Manager schedule:

- If you are using both Legacy and VSS Backups, make sure your backup schedules do not overlap as the second backup may fail. This failure is due to Exchange not allowing Legacy and VSS Backups to process at the same time.
- If you want to use the Tivoli Storage Manager server-prompted scheduling mode, you must ensure that the Data Protection for Exchange option file has the **tcpclientaddress** and **tcpclientport** options specified. If you want to run more than one scheduler service, use the same **tcpclientaddress**. However, you must use different values for **tcpclientport** (in addition to the different node names). An example of running more than one scheduler service is when you are scheduling Data Protection for Exchange as well as the regular Windows backup client.

Server-prompted scheduling is supported only when TCP/IP communication is being used. By default, Data Protection for Exchange uses the client polling schedule mode.

- If any changes that affect the scheduler are made to the Data Protection for Exchange options file, the scheduler has to be restarted in order to pick up the changes. An example of this is the Tivoli Storage Manager server address, the schedule mode, or the client TCP address or port. This can be done by issuing the following commands:

```
net stop "Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler"
net start "Data Protection for Exchange Scheduler"
```
Note: IMPORTANT! If you are running the scheduler service in a cluster environment, use the Cluster Administrator to stop and restart your scheduler service. Do NOT use the net stop and net start commands.

- The default Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler log file (dsmsched.log) contains status information for the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler. In this example, the file is located in this path:
  d:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\TDPExchange\dsmsched.log
You can override this file name by specifying the schedlogname option in the Data Protection for Exchange options file.

- Data Protection for Exchange creates its own log file with statistics about the backed up storage group objects when the logfile parameter is specified during the tdpexcc command. In the sample file (excfull.smp), the log file is excsched.log. This file is different from the Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler log file and must also be different from the file to which the tdpexcc command output is redirected. In the example above, this file is excfull.log.

Note: Output from scheduled commands are sent to the scheduler log file (dsmsched.log). After scheduled work is performed, check the log to ensure the work completed successfully.

When a scheduled command is processed, the scheduler log might contain the following entry:

Scheduled event eventName completed successfully

This is merely an indication that Tivoli Storage Manager successfully issued the scheduled command associated with the eventName. No attempt is made to determine the success or failure of the command. You should assess the success or failure of the command by evaluating the return code from the scheduled command in the scheduler log. The scheduler log entry for the command’s return code is prefaced with the following text:

Finished command. Return code is:

- If passwordaccess generate is not specified in the dsm.opt file, then the Tivoli Storage Manager password needs to be specified on the tdpexcc command. To specify the password, use the /tsmpassword parameter in the command file being run by the scheduler (excfull.cmd). You can also specify the password on the Data Protection for Exchange command line. For example:

  tdpexcc query tsm /tsmnode=mars1 /tsmpassword=newpassword
Appendix B. Silent installation

Administrators can install Data Protection for Exchange using silent installation. A silent installation runs on its own without any intervention so that administrators are freed from the task of monitoring the installation and providing input to dialog boxes. This method is especially useful when Data Protection for Exchange must be installed on a number of different computers with identical hardware. For example, a company may have 25 Exchange Servers spread out across 25 different sites. To ensure a consistent configuration and to avoid having 25 different people enter Data Protection for Exchange parameters, an administrator may choose to produce an unattended install and make it available to the 25 sites by cutting and sending out 25 CDs or by placing the unattended install package on a file server.

You can perform a silent installation using one of the following methods:

Setup Program
Use the setup command with the command-line invocation and special silent installation options.

Microsoft Installer (MSI)
Use msiexec.exe to install the MSI package.

The following options can be used with both silent installation methods:

Table 8. Silent installation options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/i</td>
<td>Specifies the program is to install the product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/l*v</td>
<td>Specifies verbose logging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/qn</td>
<td>Runs the installation without running the external user interface sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s</td>
<td>Specifies silent mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/v</td>
<td>Specifies the Setup Program to pass the parameter string to the call it makes to the MSI executable (msiexec.exe). Note the following syntax requirements when invoking the /v option:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A backslash () must be placed in front of any quotation marks (&quot; &quot;) that reside within existing quotation marks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Do not include a space between the /v command line option and its arguments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Multiple parameters entered with the /v command line option must be separated with a space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can create a log file by specifying the directory and filename at the end of the command. The directory must already exist at the time a silent installation is performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/x</td>
<td>Specifies the program is to uninstall the product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addlocal</td>
<td>Specifies features to install.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allusers</td>
<td>Specifies which users can use the installation package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installdir</td>
<td>Specifies the directory where Data Protection for Exchange is to be installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8. Silent installation options (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reboot</td>
<td>Specifies whether or not to prompt the user to reboot the system after silent installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Force Always prompts user to reboot after silent installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Suppress Suppress prompt to reboot after silent installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ReallySuppress Suppress all reboots and prompts to reboot after silent installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rebootyesno</td>
<td>Specifies whether or not to reboot the system after silent installation. Specify Yes to reboot the system after silent installation. Specify No not to reboot the system after silent installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transforms</td>
<td>Specifies language to install.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following features are used in this procedure and are case sensitive:

Table 9. Silent installation features (base client only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Docs</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange Readme and User’s Guide (HTML and PDF format)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License_Paid</td>
<td>License file (Used when PAID versions of Data Protection for Exchange are installed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License_TryBuy</td>
<td>License file (Used when TryBuy versions of Data Protection for Exchange are installed)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10. Silent installation features (Language Packages only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LanguageFiles</td>
<td>Language specific files</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11. Silent installation features (IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plugin</td>
<td>IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module (enables basic VSS operations)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12. Silent installation features (IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Hardware Devices Snapshot Integration Module only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plugin</td>
<td>IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Hardware Devices Snapshot Integration Module (enables VSS Instant Restore operations)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following transforms are used in this procedure:

Table 13. Silent installation transforms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transform</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1028.mst</td>
<td>CHT Chinese (Traditional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1029.mst</td>
<td>CSY Czech¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1031.mst</td>
<td>DEU German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1033.mst</td>
<td>ENG English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1034.mst</td>
<td>ESP Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1036.mst</td>
<td>FRA French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1038.mst</td>
<td>HUN Hungarian¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1040.mst</td>
<td>ITA Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1041.mst</td>
<td>JPN Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1042.mst</td>
<td>KOR Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1045.mst</td>
<td>PLK Polish¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1046.mst</td>
<td>PTB Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1049.mst</td>
<td>RUS Russian¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2052.mst</td>
<td>CHS Chinese (Simplified)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Language support is for the following components only:
- IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module
- IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services Hardware Devices Snapshot Integration Module

This language support does not apply to Data Protection for Exchange.

Installing with the Setup Program (setup.exe)

**Note:** This section shows an example of the Data Protection for Exchange silent installation. You must substitute the appropriate feature when installing a language other than English. See Table 10 on page 124.

Run the following command to silently install Data Protection for Exchange to the default installation directory:

```
setup /s /v/qn
```

This example silently installs Data Protection for Exchange to a directory other than the default installation directory and includes custom features:

```
setup /v"INSTALLDIR=\"c:\program files\tivoli\tsm\" ADDLOCAL=\"Client,License_Paid,Docs\" TRANSFORMS=1033.mst /qn /T*v \"e:\log.txt\"
```

**Notes:**
1. You must place a backslash (\) before each quotation mark that is within an outer set of quotation marks (").
2. You must place quotation marks (") around the following:
   - A directory path that contains spaces.
• An argument that specifies multiple features. Although quotation marks are needed around the complete argument, you must still place a backslash before each internal quotation mark.

3. All features listed in a custom installation must be listed after the addlocal option.

Creating batch files

A batch file can be created to begin silent install with desired parameters.

- c:\setup.bat — sample script to demonstrate unattended installation.

```bash
@echo off
rem ====================================
rem sample silent install script
rem setup /s /v"INSTALLDIR="X:\Desired Install Path" /qn"
rem ====================================
rem code could be added after the
rem installation completes to
rem customize the ds.m.opt files
rem if desired
rem ====================================
```

Installing with MSI (msiexec.exe)

Note: This section shows an example of the Data Protection for Exchange silent installation. You must substitute the appropriate .msi package filename and Language Package feature when installing a language other than English. See Table 10 on page 124.

This example silently installs Data Protection for Exchange to a directory other than the default installation directory and includes custom features:

```bash
msiexec /i "IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail - MS Exchange.msi"
RebootYesNo="No" Reboot="Suppress" ALLUSERS=1
INSTALLDIR=c:\program files\tivoli\tsm"
ADDLOCAL="Client,License_Paid,Docs"
TRANSFORMS=1033.mst /qn /l*v "e:\log.txt"
```

Notes:

1. You must place a backslash (\) before each quotation mark that is within an outer set of quotation marks (").
2. You must place quotation marks (") around the following:
   • A directory path that contains spaces.
   • An argument that specifies multiple features. Although quotation marks are needed around the complete argument, you must still place a backslash before each internal quotation mark.
3. All features listed in a custom installation must be specified after the addlocal option.

Installation problems: capturing a log of the installation

In the event of an installation failure, please record symptoms and environment information for the failing install and contact customer support with that information. The following environmental information may be helpful:

- Operating system level
- Service pack
- Hardware description
• Install package (CD-ROM or electronic download) and level
• Any Windows event log that is relevant to the failed install
• Other Windows services active at the time of the install (e.g. anti-virus software)

Before contacting support, you can check for the following:
• You are logged on to the local machine console (not via terminal server).
• You are logged on as a local administrator, not a domain administrator. Cross-domain installs are not supported by Tivoli.

Assuming that all looks correct, gather a detailed log of the failing install into a file called setup.log. To do this, run the setup program as follows:

setup /v"/1*v setup.log"

Creating the package on a cd or a file server

The administrator has a choice of making the package available in different ways including burning a CD or placing the package in a shared directory on a file server. Typically, the package contains the Data Protection for Exchange code distribution files and a batch file for silent install.

Creating a silent install package

First you will need to choose a location for the package. If you are burning a CD it is convenient to use a staging directory. If you are placing the package on a file server you can use a staging directory or you can build the package directly on the file server. The following example uses c:\tdpdpkg as a staging directory. It is recommended you have a minimum of 14 MB of free space in the staging directory. The following commands can be executed to create the package.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mkdir c:\tdpdpkg</td>
<td>– Create a staging directory for the silent install package</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cd /d c:\tdpdpkg</td>
<td>– Go to the staging directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xcopy g:*.* /s</td>
<td>– Copy the Data Protection for Exchange CD distribution files to the staging directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy c:\setup.bat</td>
<td>– Replace the existing setup.bat with the one created in the previous step</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

At this point the silent install should be tested. When testing is complete the package can be placed on CD or it can be made available from a shared directory.

Playing back the silent installation

Once the package is available on CD or from a shared directory it can be played back (run) on another machine. Allow enough time for the unattended setup to complete. No visual cues exist to inform you when the installation has finished, although this could be added in the batch file.

• From a silent install package on CD:
  If autostart is enabled, the silent install begins as soon as the CD is inserted into the drive. If autostart is not enabled, the silent install can be run by executing the setup.bat file from the root of the CD.
  
  cd /d g:\
  setup.bat
• From a distribution directory:
If the package was placed in a shared directory called tdpdpkg located at \\machine1\d$, another computer could execute the command: net use x \\machine1\d$ to share the drive as drive x. The following command could then be issued:

cd /d x:\tdpdpkg
setup.bat

In either case the silent install begins.

Setup error messages

The setup.exe program may produce error messages if it cannot start properly. In most cases you will encounter these messages when a severe error occurs. Rarely will your end users see these messages. When you get an error message, it appears in a message box. Every error message has a number. These are system error messages and there is no way to suppress them in your script.

If you encounter an error you can go to the InstallShield support Web site at URL: http://support.installshield.com/default.asp, and use the Search facility to obtain information on the error.
Appendix C. Advanced restore procedures

Data Protection for Exchange can be used to:

• restore a single mailbox
    See BRICKBACK.DOC in the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory. BRICKBACK.DOC explains how to use the Microsoft ExMerge utility and the Tivoli Storage Manager Backup-Archive Client to perform an item level backup and restore. Data Protection for Exchange is not involved with that solution.
• completely restore a server that has been destroyed
• move Exchange data from an old server to a newer replacement server

Note: Please refer to your Microsoft documentation for a more complete discussion of advanced restore procedures for Exchange servers.

The following procedure explains how to restore your Exchange data once the rest of the machine is recovered or installed.

Note: This explanation does not go into details on how to restore the entire machine or even your Exchange Server. To back up your Windows server and configuration files, including the Exchange Server program and configuration files, you must rely on some other backup facility. An example of a backup facility is located in the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Backup-Archive Client Installation and User’s Guide publication.

### Complete Restore or Replacement

For information on how to recover an Exchange 2000 Server, see the Microsoft white paper, "Disaster Recovery for Microsoft Exchange 2000 Server" at the following URL: [http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;326052](http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;326052)


### Individual Mailbox Restore

For information on how to recover an Exchange 2000 Server mailbox, see the Microsoft white paper "Mailbox Recovery for Microsoft Exchange 2000 Server" at the following URL: [http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;326278](http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;326278)

Exchange 2003 Recovery Storage Group

This section describes how to restore mailbox databases using the Exchange 2003 Recovery Storage Group feature. This procedure ONLY applies to Legacy restores. VSS Restores to the Recovery Storage Group are NOT supported by Microsoft.

Requirements

The following requirements must be met for this procedure to be successful:

• The mailbox database to be restored can reside on any server running Exchange 2000 Server (Service Pack 3 or later) or Exchange Server 2003 within the same Admin group.
• If you are restoring multiple mailbox stores at the same time, they all must be from a single storage group.
• You must run the restore from an account that has Receive As and Send As permissions on all mailboxes to be restored.
• You cannot use multiple instances of Data Protection for Exchange to restore databases into the Recovery Storage Group simultaneously.

Procedure

Information regarding Recovery Storage Group processing is written to the Data Protection for Exchange activity log file (tdpexc.cfg by default).

Note: When restoring to a Recovery Storage Group, you must specify the option to replay restored logs only or the restore operation may fail. Select *Replay Restored Logs ONLY* in the GUI Restore Window or specify `/recovery=applyrestoredlogs` on the command line.

This procedure assumes that you have already backed up your storage group.

1. Use the Exchange System Manager to create the Recovery Storage Group (if one does not already exist).
2. Use the Exchange System Manager to add the mailbox database you want to restore to the Recovery Storage Group.
3. Use Data Protection for Exchange to restore the mailbox database. Make sure that no public folders within the storage group are selected. By default, the database is restored directly to the Recovery Storage Group. The Data Protection for Exchange GUI will display a text message to remind you that all mailbox database restores will go to the Recovery Storage Group if a Recovery Storage Group exists.
   • If a Recovery Storage Group does not exist, the database is restored directly to the original storage group.

   Note: Please note that only transaction logs that are contained in the backup will be applied to the mailbox database when performing a Recovery Storage Group restore.
4. Use the Microsoft ExMerge utility to perform one of the following:
   • import the mailboxes to the desired storage group; or
   • export the desired mailboxes to external .PST files.
Appendix D. Support information

If you have a problem with your IBM software, you want to resolve it quickly. This section describes the following options for obtaining support for IBM software products:
- “What to do when you encounter a problem”
- “Searching knowledge bases” on page 132
- “Obtaining fixes” on page 133
- “Receiving weekly support updates” on page 133
- “Contacting IBM Software Support” on page 135

What to do when you encounter a problem

If you encounter a problem during Data Protection for Exchange processing, follow these steps as your first attempt to resolve the problem:
1. Retry the operation that failed.
2. If the problem occurred during an incremental, differential, or database copy backup, run a full backup. If the full backup completes successfully, retry the operation that failed.
3. If the problem still exists, close other applications, especially those applications that interact with Exchange (anti-virus applications, for example). Retry the operation that failed.
4. If the problem still exists:
   a. Shut down the Exchange server.
   b. Start the Exchange server again.
   c. Run the operation that failed.
5. If the problem still exists:
   a. Shut down the entire machine.
   b. Start the machine again.
   c. Run the operation that failed.
6. If the problem still exists, determine if it is occurring on other Exchange servers.

Determining if the problem resides on Tivoli Storage Manager or Exchange

This section provides information to help determine if the problem is a Data Protection for Exchange issue or an Exchange issue.

For Legacy operations:
- Try recreating the problem with the Microsoft NTBACKUP utility. This utility uses a call sequence similar to Data Protection for Exchange to run an online backup. If the problem is recreatable with NTBACKUP then the problem most likely exists within the Exchange server.
- Try recreating the problem with the Microsoft BACKREST application. This application can run backups using the Microsoft Exchange APIs. If the problem is recreatable with BACKREST then the problem most likely exists within the Exchange server. Microsoft ships BACKREST with the Exchange Software.
Developer’s Kit (SDK). IBM Service can provide a copy of BACKREST if you encounter problems obtaining or building this application.

- If the error message “ACN5350E An unknown Exchange API error has occurred” is displayed, the Exchange server encountered an unexpected situation. Microsoft assistance may be needed if the problem continues.
- Data Protection for Exchange error messages occasionally contain an HRESULT code. Use this code to search Microsoft documentation and the Microsoft Knowledge Base for resolution information. The Exchange SDK file ESEBKMSG.H contain these messages.

For VSS operations: Try recreating the problem with the Microsoft VSHADOW application. This application can run backups using the Microsoft Exchange VSS APIs. If the problem is recreatable with VSHADOW then the problem most likely exists within the VSS provider or the Exchange server. Microsoft ships VSHADOW with the Volume Shadow Copy Services (VSS) Software Developer’s Kit (SDK). IBM Service can provide a copy of VSHADOW if you encounter problems obtaining or building this application.

### Installation Problems: Creating an Installation Log File

In the event a silent installation fails, gather the following information to assist Customer Support when evaluating your situation:

- operating system level
- service pack
- hardware description
- installation package (CD-ROM or electronic download) and level
- any Windows event log relevant to the failed installation
- Windows services active during the failed installation (for example, anti-virus software)
- whether you are logged on to the local machine console (not via terminal server)
- whether you are logged on as a local administrator, not a domain administrator (Tivoli does not support cross-domain installs)

You can create a detailed log file (setup.log) of the failed installation. Run the setup program (setup.exe) in the following manner:

```
setup /v"*+v setup.log"
```

### Searching knowledge bases

You can search the available knowledge bases to determine whether your problem was already encountered and is already documented.

### Searching the information center

IBM provides extensive documentation that can be installed on your local computer or on an intranet server. You can use the search function of this information center to query conceptual information, instructions for completing tasks, and reference information.

### Searching the Internet

If you cannot find an answer to your question in the information center, search the Internet for the latest, most complete information that might help you resolve your problem.

To search multiple Internet resources for your product, go to this product support web site: http://www.ibm.com/software/sysmgmt/products/support/
IBMTivoliStorageManager.html and look for the section to search the support knowledge base. From this section, you can search a variety of resources including:

- IBM technote
- IBM downloads
- IBM Redbooks™
- Forums and newsgroups

You can also search the IBM Tivoli Storage Manager: Problem Determination Guide for helpful diagnostic information at this Web site:

### Obtaining fixes

A product fix might be available to resolve your problem. To determine what fixes are available for your IBM software product, follow these steps:

2. Click Downloads and drivers in the Support topics section.
3. Select the Software category.
4. Select a product in the Sub-category list.
5. In the Find downloads and drivers by product section, select one software category from the Category list.
6. Select one product from the Sub-category list.
7. Type more search terms in the Search within results if you want to refine your search.
8. Click Search.
9. From the list of downloads returned by your search, click the name of a fix to read the description of the fix and to optionally download the fix.

For more information about the types of fixes that are available, see the IBM Software Support Handbook at http://techsupport.services.ibm.com/guides/handbook.html.

### Receiving weekly support updates

To receive weekly e-mail notifications about fixes and other software support news, follow these steps:

2. Click My support in the upper right corner of the page.
3. If you have already registered for My support, sign in and skip to the next step. If you have not registered, click register now. Complete the registration form using your e-mail address as your IBM ID and click Submit.
4. Click Edit profile.
5. In the Products list, select Software. A second list is displayed.
6. In the second list, select the product segment, Storage Management. A third list is displayed.
7. In the third list, select the product sub-segment, Data Protection. A list of applicable products is displayed.
8. Select the products for which you want to receive updates, for example, IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail.
9. Click Add products.
10. After selecting all products that are of interest to you, click Subscribe to email on the Edit profile tab.
11. Select Please send these documents by weekly email.
12. Update your e-mail address as needed.
13. In the Documents list, select Software.
14. Select the types of documents that you want to receive information about.
15. Click Update.

If you experience problems with the My support feature, you can obtain help in one of the following ways:

**Online**
Send an e-mail message to erchelp@ca.ibm.com, describing your problem.

**By phone**
Call 1-800-IBM-4You (1-800-426-4968).
Contacting IBM Software Support

IBM Software Support provides assistance with product defects.

Before contacting IBM Software Support, your company must have an active IBM software maintenance contract, and you must be authorized to submit problems to IBM. The type of software maintenance contract that you need depends on the type of product you have:

- For IBM distributed software products (including, but not limited to, Tivoli, Lotus®, and Rational® products, as well as DB2® and WebSphere® products that run on Windows or UNIX® operating systems), enroll in Passport Advantage® in one of the following ways:

  **Online**
  
  Go to the Passport Advantage Web site at http://www.lotus.com/services/passport.nsf/WebDocs/Passport_Advantage_Home and click How to Enroll.

  **By phone**
  
  For the phone number to call in your country, go to the IBM Software Support Web site at http://techsupport.services.ibm.com/guides/contacts.html and click the name of your geographic region.

- For customers with Subscription and Support (S & S) contracts, go to the Software Service Request Web site at https://techsupport.services.ibm.com/ssr/login.


- For IBM eServer™ software products (including, but not limited to, DB2 and WebSphere products that run in zSeries®, pSeries®, and iSeries™ environments), you can purchase a software maintenance agreement by working directly with an IBM sales representative or an IBM Business Partner. For more information about support for eServer software products, go to the IBM Technical Support Advantage Web site at http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/techsupport.html.

If you are not sure what type of software maintenance contract you need, call 1-800-IBMSERV (1-800-426-7378) in the United States. From other countries, go to the contacts page of the IBM Software Support Handbook on the Web at http://techsupport.services.ibm.com/guides/contacts.html and click the name of your geographic region for phone numbers of people who provide support for your location.

To contact IBM Software support, follow these steps:

1. “Determining the business impact”
2. “Describing problems and gathering information” on page 136
3. “Submitting problems” on page 136

**Determining the business impact**

When you report a problem to IBM, you are asked to supply a severity level. Therefore, you need to understand and assess the business impact of the problem that you are reporting. Use the following criteria:
Severity 1
The problem has a critical business impact. You are unable to use the program, resulting in a critical impact on operations. This condition requires an immediate solution.

Severity 2
The problem has a significant business impact. The program is usable, but it is severely limited.

Severity 3
The problem has some business impact. The program is usable, but less significant features (not critical to operations) are unavailable.

Severity 4
The problem has minimal business impact. The problem causes little impact on operations, or a reasonable circumvention to the problem was implemented.

Describing problems and gathering information
When describing a problem to IBM, be as specific as possible. Include all relevant background information so that IBM Software Support specialists can help you solve the problem efficiently. To save time, know the answers to these questions:
• What software versions were you running when the problem occurred?
• Do you have logs, traces, and messages that are related to the problem symptoms? IBM Software Support is likely to ask for this information.
• Can you re-create the problem? If so, what steps were performed to re-create the problem?
• Did you make any changes to the system? For example, did you make changes to the hardware, operating system, networking software, and so on.
• Are you currently using a workaround for the problem? If so, be prepared to explain the workaround when you report the problem.

Submitting problems
You can submit your problem to IBM Software Support in one of two ways:

Online
Click Submit and track problems on the IBM Software Support site at http://www.ibm.com/software/support/probsub.html. Type your information into the appropriate problem submission form.

By phone
For the phone number to call in your country, go to the contacts page of the IBM Software Support Handbook at http://techsupport.services.ibm.com/guides/contacts.html and click the name of your geographic region.

If the problem you submit is for a software defect or for missing or inaccurate documentation, IBM Software Support creates an Authorized Program Analysis Report (APAR). The APAR describes the problem in detail. Whenever possible, IBM Software Support provides a workaround for you to implement until the APAR is resolved and a fix is delivered. IBM publishes resolved APARs on the IBM product support Web pages daily, so that other users who experience the same problem can benefit from the same resolutions.

For more information about problem resolution, see Searching knowledge bases and Obtaining fixes.
## Appendix E. Data Protection for Exchange Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>System action</th>
<th>User response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACN0003S</td>
<td>An internal processing error has occurred.</td>
<td>An internal processing error has occurred.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Retry the operation. If this error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0004E</td>
<td>An unknown error has been detected.</td>
<td>An internal processing error has occurred that prevents the generation of a message for a return code.</td>
<td>Processing continues</td>
<td>Retry the operation. If this error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0005E</td>
<td>Out of memory. Stop other processes and try the operation again.</td>
<td>The machine has run out of memory.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Close unnecessary processes and try the operation again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0005S</td>
<td>License file (licensefile) could not be opened.</td>
<td>An attempt to read from the license file failed.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Install the product again. This ensures that the correct license file is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0005E</td>
<td>Read failure on license file (licensefile).</td>
<td>An attempt was made to read from the license file. This attempt failed.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Reinstall the product. This will ensure that the correct license file is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0005E</td>
<td>Write failure on license file (licensefile).</td>
<td>An attempt to write to the license file failed.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Make sure enough space exists on the workstation to write to the license file. If enough space exists, run the command again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0005E</td>
<td>Data in the license file (licensefile) is not in a valid format.</td>
<td>An attempt to read information from the license file failed.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Install the product again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0005S</td>
<td>The checksum in the license file (licensefile) does not match the license string text.</td>
<td>An attempt was made to read information from the license file. The checksum was not valid so it appears that the license file is not at the correct level.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Reinstall the product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0058E</td>
<td>The 'Try and Buy' license has expired.</td>
<td>This 'Try and Buy' license that was detected has expired.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Reinstall the product. This product is no longer valid for use. A valid license must be obtained before running the product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0102E</td>
<td>Invalid command:</td>
<td>This message displays the invalid command that was entered.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Re-enter a valid command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0103E</td>
<td>Invalid option for the specified command:</td>
<td>This message displays the command that was entered, up to and including the invalid option that was detected as invalid for the command.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Re-enter the command specifying valid command options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0104E</td>
<td>Invalid option:</td>
<td>This message displays the command that was entered, up to and including the invalid option that was detected.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td>Re-enter the command specifying valid command options.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**User response:** Re-enter the command specifying valid command options.

---

**ACN0105E** Missing argument:

**Explanation:** This message displays the command that was entered, up to and including the command or option whose required argument is missing.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Re-enter the command specifying a valid argument for the command or option.

---

**ACN0132W** Tracing could not be started. Processing will continue.

**Explanation:** A problem prevented tracing from beginning.

**System action:** Processing will continue with the command entered.

**User response:** Refer to the other messages that display with this message to determine the problem.

---

**ACN0133W** Could not locate installation directory. Attempting to continue...

**Explanation:** An attempt was made to read the registry to determine where the Tivoli Data Protection application client was installed. This attempt failed.

**System action:** Processing will continue with the command entered.

**User response:** There should be other messages along with this one. Refer to the other messages to determine the problem. If the problem cannot be determined, it may be necessary to reinstall the application client code. This will ensure that the registry entries are set up correctly.

---

**ACN0134W** Could not locate log directory. Processing will continue...

**Explanation:** An attempt was made to read the registry to determine where the Tivoli Data Protection application client log is located. This attempt failed.

**System action:** Processing will continue with the command entered.

**User response:** There should be other messages along with this one. Refer to the other messages to determine the problem. If the problem cannot be determined, it may be necessary to reinstall the application client code. This will ensure that the registry entries are set up correctly.

---

**ACN0150I** Operation canceled by user.

**Explanation:** The user has requested that the Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server application client end by entering ctrl-C.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** None

---

**ACN0151E** Errors occurred while processing the request.

**Explanation:** Attempting to process the request entered, an error occurred.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Attempt to determine the source of the errors from viewing the log file. Correct the problems and try running the command again.

---

**ACN0152I** Performance stats: seconds seconds spent in apicall API calls

**Explanation:** The indicated number of seconds were spent making API calls for the indicated system.

**System action:** Processing continues.

**User response:** None

---

**ACN0153I** Performance stats: seconds seconds spent in function

**Explanation:** The indicated number of seconds were spent the named function.

**System action:** Processing continues.

**User response:** None

---

**ACN0154E** The Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server application client cannot work with the version of the Tivoli Storage Manager API you have installed. Please install version version.release.level or greater.

**Explanation:** The version of the Tivoli Storage Manager API currently installed on the system is older than the version used to build the Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server application client.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Install a version of the Tivoli Storage Manager API at or later than the indicated level. A copy is distributed with the Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server application client.

---

**ACN0155E** The Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server application client cannot work with the release of Tivoli Storage Manager API you have installed. Please install release version.release.level or greater.

**Explanation:** The release of the Tivoli Storage Manager API currently installed on the system is older than the release used to build the Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server application client.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Install a release of the Tivoli Storage Manager API at or later than the indicated level. A copy is distributed with the Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server application client.
ACN0156E Could not load the Tivoli Storage Manager API.
Explanation: The Tivoli Storage Manager API could not be loaded.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Ensure the Tivoli Storage Manager API is correctly installed. Run the Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server application client with the /TRACEFLAGS=API /TRACEFILE=filename options and view the tracefile to determine why it could not be loaded. Another possible cause is that the TSMAPI.DLL does not exist in the system directory. Re-install the Tivoli Storage Manager API, if this is the case.

ACN0160E An authentication error occurred with your stored Tivoli Storage Manager password.
Explanation: You were unable to log on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server due an authentication error.
System action: Processing stops.
User response: The stored Tivoli Storage Manager password may have become corrupted. Contact your Tivoli Storage Manager server administrator.

ACN0161E Authentication error. The password entered is not valid. You are not logged on to the Tivoli Storage Manager server.
Explanation: An incorrect password was entered.
System action: Processing stops.
User response: Enter the correct Tivoli Storage Manager password and try again.

ACN0162E The passwords entered do not match. Please enter them again.
Explanation: An incorrect password was entered.
System action: Processing stops.
User response: Enter the correct Tivoli Storage Manager password and try again.

ACN0163E The directory path needs to be fully-qualified.
Explanation: The /intopath option was specified without a fully-qualified path.
System action: Processing stops.
User response: Enter the command again and specify a fully-qualified path in the /intopath option.

ACN0167E The fully-qualified file name is too long.
Explanation: An attempt was made to use a fully-qualified file name that was too long. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0200E File (filename) could not be opened for reading.
Explanation: An attempt was made to open a file for reading. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0201E File (filename) could not be opened for writing.
Explanation: An attempt was made to open a file for writing. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0202E Read failure on file (filename).
Explanation: An attempt was made to read from a file. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0203E Write failure on file (filename).
Explanation: An attempt was made to write to a file. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0204E File (filename) could not be closed.
Explanation: An attempt was made to close a file. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0205E File (filename) statistics could not be obtained.
Explanation: An attempt was made to obtain file statistics. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0206E Directory (directory) could not be created.
Explanation: An attempt was made to create a directory. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0207E Directory path (directorypath) is too long.
Explanation: An attempt was made to use a directory path that was too long. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0208E There is not enough disk space for the operation attempted.
Explanation: An attempted operation required more disk space than was available. The attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0209E The rename of file (filename1) to (filename2) failed.
Explanation: An attempt was made to rename a file. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0210E The Tivoli Storage Manager high level qualifier is too long.
Explanation: An attempt was made to use a Tivoli Storage Manager high level qualifier that was too long. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0211E The Tivoli Storage Manager low level qualifier is too long.
Explanation: An attempt was made to use a Tivoli Storage Manager low level qualifier that was too long. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0212E The Tivoli Storage Manager filespace name is too long.
Explanation: An attempt was made to use a Tivoli Storage Manager filespace name that was too long. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0213E The maximum number of objects allowed per Tivoli Storage Manager transaction is too small.
Explanation: In order to maintain backup data integrity, multiple backup objects are sent to the Tivoli Storage Manager server in a single transaction. The Tivoli Storage Manager server has indicated that the maximum number of objects allowed per transaction is less than the minimum required by the Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server application client.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Increase the maximum number of objects allowed per transaction on the Tivoli Storage Manager server and retry the operation.

ACN0214E The backup object’s management class backup copy group does not exist.
Explanation: The Tivoli Storage Manager server has indicated that the backup object’s management class backup copy group does not exist.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Contact your Tivoli Storage Manager server administrator.

ACN0215E All backup objects do not have the same management class backup copy destination.
Explanation: In order to maintain backup data integrity, multiple backup objects are sent to the Tivoli Storage Manager server within a single transaction. All backup objects within a single transaction are required to have the same management class backup copy destinations.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Contact your Tivoli Storage Manager server administrator.

ACN0216E Unable to obtain space information for volume (volumename).
Explanation: An attempt was made to obtain space information for a volume. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN0217E The Tivoli Storage Manager filespace name is invalid.
Explanation: The filespace name or directory delimiter is invalid.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Check that the filespace name length, characters, and directory delimiters are valid.

ACN0218E The Tivoli Storage Manager high level qualifier is invalid.
Explanation: The high level qualifier name or directory delimiter is invalid.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Check that the high level qualifier name length, characters, and directory delimiters are valid.

ACN0219E The Tivoli Storage Manager low level qualifier is invalid.
Explanation: The low level qualifier name or directory delimiter is invalid.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Check that the low level qualifier name length, characters, and directory delimiters are valid.

ACN0256E The password in your Tivoli Storage Manager options file has expired. Please change your password on the Tivoli Storage Manager server using the ‘change password’ command and then either change or remove the password value in your options file.
Explanation: Your Tivoli Storage Manager password has expired. You need to change your password.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Obtain a new password for your Tivoli Storage Manager server; node using the change
password command or by asking your Tivoli Storage Manager Administrator to change your password.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>System action</th>
<th>User response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACN0257E</td>
<td>Your password has expired.</td>
<td>Your Tivoli Storage Manager password has expired. A new password needs to be obtained.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0258E</td>
<td>You did not enter a valid password.</td>
<td>The password that was entered was not a valid password.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0259E</td>
<td>The password you entered for verification does not match the password you entered for your new password. Your password will not be changed.</td>
<td>The password you entered for verification of your new password does not match the new password that was entered.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0260I</td>
<td>Password successfully changed.</td>
<td>The change password command completed successfully</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0261I</td>
<td>There are no backups for the server named <code>servername</code>.</td>
<td>There are no backups on the Tivoli Storage Manager server for the specified server name.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0263E</td>
<td>Failed to start Web browser with a return code of <code>returncode</code>.</td>
<td>An attempt was made to start the web browser to view the TSM HTML book. This attempt failed.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0264I</td>
<td>Could not find the default browser defined. An attempt will be made to use Microsoft Internet Explorer.</td>
<td>An attempt was made to read the registry to determine the default browser. However, a default browser is not defined. A determination will be made where Microsoft Internet Explorer is installed.</td>
<td>Processing continues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0265E</td>
<td>Could not find Internet Explorer.</td>
<td>An attempt was made to read the registry to determine where Microsoft’s Internet Explorer was installed. This attempt failed.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0266E</td>
<td>Could not find the Tivoli Storage Manager HTML books.</td>
<td>An attempt was made to read the registry to determine where the Tivoli Storage Manager books were installed. This attempt failed.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0267E</td>
<td>The verify password entered does not match the new password entered.</td>
<td>The verify password does not match the new password.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0300E</td>
<td>Invalid restore type.</td>
<td>The type of restore requested is invalid.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN0301E</td>
<td>Invalid backup type.</td>
<td>The type of backup requested is invalid.</td>
<td>Processing ends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN351E</td>
<td>Invalid trace keyword - <code>keyword</code></td>
<td>A TRACEFLAG option in the user configuration file or on the command line is incorrect.</td>
<td>Client program did not initialize or tracing was not enabled in the applet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ACN357E  Unable to open trace output file
file-name.
Explanation: A TRACFILE option in the user
configuration file or on the command line used a
directory path and file-name combination to which you
do not have write access.
System action: Client program did not initialize.
User response: Change the TRACFILE value so that
it is a location to which you have write access.

ACN366E  Unable to close trace output file
file-name.
Explanation: An error occurred during the closing of a
trace output file-name (for example, not enough disk
space).
System action: Processing continues.
User response: Check the options.doc file for a
description of possible causes of the error, or see your
system administrator.

ACN367E  Unable to write to trace file tracefile.
Tracing disabled.
Explanation: An error occurred when writing to the
specified tracefile.
System action: Tracing is disabled. Processing
continues.
User response: Ensure the device that the tracefile
access is available and has sufficient space for the
tracefile. Retry the command.

ACN368E  Invalid trace file name (name too long).
Explanation: A TRACFILE option in the preferences
files used a file name that is too long.
System action: Client program did not initialize.
User response: Change the file name used as the
TRACFILE so that it is equal to or less than 255
characters in length.

ACN383E  Specifying the trace file 'link' as a
symbolic link is not allowed.
Explanation: Trace file 'linkname' cannot be a symbolic
link.
System action: The symbolic link 'linkname' is deleted,
the trace file is recreated, and processing stops.
User response: Specify the trace file location with the
'tracefile' option.

ACN384E  Symbolic link 'linkname' to 'target' was
successfully deleted.
Explanation: Log 'linkname' cannot be a symbolic link.
System action: The symbolic link 'linkname' is deleted,
the log is recreated, and processing stops.
User response: Check the location of the new file. To
specify the location of log files, refer to the user's
manual for the 'errorlogname' option, the
'schedlogname' option, and the 'DSM_LOG'
environmental variable.

ACN385E  Unable to delete symbolic link 'link'.
Explanation: Log 'linkname' cannot be a symbolic link.
System action: Processing stops.
User response: Delete the symbolic link 'linkname'.

ACN476E  program-name: cannot open file file-spec:
error.
Explanation: TDP cannot open the file.
System action: TDP cannot complete the requested
operation.
User response: Retry the operation. If the problem
continues, check with your system administrator.

ACN487E  Specifying the error log 'link' as a
symbolic link is not allowed.
Explanation: Error log 'linkname' cannot be a symbolic
link.
System action: The symbolic link 'linkname' is deleted,
the error log is recreated, and processing stops.
User response: Check the location of the new error
log. To specify the location of the error logs, refer to the
user's manual for the 'errorlogname' option and
'DSM_LOG' environmental variable.

ACN488E  Initialization functions cannot open the
error log: log-name. errno = errno-value,
Explanation: The file log-name could not be opened
during initialization. The system set the error code
errno-value. If the reason given is "access denied," the
current user does not have permission to write to the
log in the directory specified. It is also possible that no
space is available at the given log location.
System action: Processing terminates.
User response: Set the DSM_LOG or DSM_LOG
environment variable to a directory into which the
current user can write. You may also use the
ERRORLOGNAME option to specify a file to which the
current has write permission.

ACN495E  Failure writing to a Tivoli Storage
Manager log or log-related file: file-name,
errno = errno-value, reason
Explanation: A failure was encountered when writing
to one of the log files or a related file named file-name.
The system set the error code errno-value. reason is the
system explanation of that error code. Among other
things, it is possible that no space is available at the
given log location.
System action: Processing terminates.
User response: Set the DSM_LOG (or DSM_LOG)
environment variable to a directory with adequate
space to write the log data.
ACN496I  TDP is converting the log-file from continuous (pruning) mode to wrapping mode. This process may take several minutes.
Explanation: The log-file was previously in continuous mode where the only size control was through the use of ERRORLOGRETENTION or SCHEDLOGRETENTION option. This is the first occasion where ERRORLOGMAX or SCHEDLOGMAX is specified for this log, so its format must be changed and old data saved.
System action: Transition processing continues.
User response: None.

ACN497I  TDP is converting the log-file from wrapping mode to continuous (pruning) mode. This process may take several minutes.
Explanation: The log-file was previously in wrapping mode where the size control was through the use of the ERRORLOGMAX or SCHEDLOGMAX option. This is the first occasion where ERRORLOGMAX or SCHEDLOGMAX is not specified for this log, so its format must be changed and old data saved.
System action: Transition processing continues.
User response: None.

ACN498I  count log records processed.
Explanation: This is just a progress report to let you know the process is still ongoing.
System action: Transition processing continues.
User response: None.

ACN501E  Invalid Proxy Configuration Detected:
Target Node 'targetnode' is not listed as a valid node to proxy to for Node Name 'nnode'.
Explanation: The proxy node configuration on the TSM Server is not correct to support this VSS operation.
System action: The VSS operation stops.
User response: Contact the TSM Server administrator to have the correct TSM Server GRANT PROXY commands issued to enable proxy authority for the nodes. If the error persists, contact your service representative.

ACN501T  Invalid Proxy Configuration Detected:
Target Node 'targetnode' is not listed as a valid node to proxy to for Node Name 'nnode'.
Explanation: The proxy node configuration on the TSM Server is not correct to support this VSS operation.
System action: The VSS operation stops.
User response: Contact the TSM Server administrator to have the correct TSM Server GRANT PROXY commands issued to enable proxy authority for the nodes. If the error persists, contact your service representative.

ACN515E  Invalid DSMAGENT Node configuration found for node 'dsmagentnode'.
Explanation: The DSMAGENT Node specified is not configured properly.
System action: The VSS operation stops.
User response: Verify that the DSMAGENT Node specified is correct and that the Client Acceptor Daemon (CAD) is running for the DSMAGENT Node. If the error persists, contact your service representative.

ACN516I  The Windows console event handler received a 'event' console event.
Explanation: A console event was received by one of the Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server processes or programs. The following events can be received:
  • Ctrl-C - This indicates either the user entered the ctrl-c sequence or that one of the Windows services was stopped.
System action: None.
User response: None.

ACN517I  An unexpected error was encountered.
TDP function name : function-name TDP function : function-desc TDP return code : TSM-res TDP file : file-name (line-number)
Explanation: None.
System action: Processing stops.
User response: Contact the TDP administrator with the information provided in this message.

ACN518E  Backups selected for restore must have the same backup location (TSM or LOCAL).
Explanation: A VSS restore operation was submitted that specified multiple backup objects. The backup objects chosen had different backup locations. This is not allowed. All backup objects submitted in the same VSS restore operation must have the same backup location, either TSM or LOCAL, but not both.
System action: The VSS restore operation stops.
User response: Retry the VSS restore operation specifying one backup object at a time.

ACN519E  The VSS operation failed with rc = returncode.
Explanation: There was a failure when TSM performed the VSS operation.
System action: The VSS operation stops.
User response: Verify that the TSM Client Acceptor Daemon (CAD) is installed, configured, and running properly on the machine. Retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Message Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACN520E</td>
<td>Failed to connect to Local DSMAGENT Node 'localdsmagentnode' at address:port 'address:portnumber'. Verify that the TSM Client Acceptor Daemon (CAD) is installed, configured, and running properly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN3500I</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange: Starting backup type backup of object name from server server name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN3502E</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange: backup type backup of object name from server server name failed, rc = return code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN3503I</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange: backup type backup of storage group name from server server name was cancelled by the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN3504I</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange: Starting restore for server servername.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN3505I</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange: Restore from server servername to servername is complete. Total backups restored: Total bytes transferred: Elapsed processing time: Secs Throughput rate: Kb/Sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN3506I</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange: Starting backup type restore of storage group storage group name to server server name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN3507E</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange: backup type restore of storage group group name to server server name completed successfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN3508E</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange: backup type restore of storage group group name to server server name failed, rc = return code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN3509I</td>
<td>Data Protection for Exchange: backup type restore of storage group group name to server server name was cancelled by the user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail: Data Protection for Microsoft Exchange Server Installation and User’s Guide
User response: None Centrally logged

---

**ACN3510I**  Data Protection for Exchange: Attempting to inactivate the object: filespace - [filespace name], hl - [high level], ll - [low level]

Explanation: This is an informational message that is written to the Tivoli Storage Manager Server activity log indicating the attempt to inactivate an object.
System action: None
User response: None Centrally logged

---

**ACN3511I**  Data Protection for Exchange: Inactivation of the previous objects succeeded.

Explanation: This is an informational message that is written to the Tivoli Storage Manager Server activity log indicating the success of the inactivation of objects.
System action: None
User response: None Centrally logged

---

**ACN3512E**  Data Protection for Exchange: Inactivation of the previous objects failed.

Explanation: This is an informational message that is written to the Tivoli Storage Manager Server activity log indicating the failure of the inactivation of objects.
System action: None
User response: None Centrally logged

---

**ACN3513E**  Data Protection for Exchange: Inactivation of the previous objects was canceled.

Explanation: This is an informational message that is written to the Tivoli Storage Manager Server activity log indicating the failure of the inactivation of objects because the task was canceled by the user.
System action: None
User response: None Centrally logged

---

**ACN3514I**  Data Protection for Exchange: Starting backup for server servername.

Explanation: This is an informational message that is written to the Tivoli Storage Manager Server activity log indicating the start of a backup.
System action: None
User response: None Centrally logged

---

**ACN3515E**  Data Protection for Exchange: Backup of server servername is complete. Total storage groups backed up: Total bytes transferred: Elapsed processing time: Secs Throughput rate: Kb/Sec

Explanation: This is an informational message that is written to the Tivoli Storage Manager Server activity log indicating the end of a backup request.
System action: None
User response: None Centrally logged

---

**ACN3517E**  Data Protection for Exchange: Backup of server servername failed, rc = returncode.

Explanation: This is an informational message that is written to the Tivoli Storage Manager Server activity log indicating the failure of a backup request.
System action: None
User response: None Centrally logged

---

**ACN3518I**  Data Protection for Exchange: Backup of server servername failed. The request was canceled by the user.

Explanation: This is an informational message that is written to the Tivoli Storage Manager Server activity log indicating the failure of a backup request. The user canceled the backup.
System action: None
User response: None Centrally logged

---

**ACN5050I**  A new configuration file has been created.

Explanation: The /configfile file specified a file name that does not exist. A new file has been created.
System action: Processing continues.
User response: None.

---

**ACN5051W**  The configuration file cannot be found, using default settings.

Explanation: The /configfile value specified a file that cannot be found. Default settings will be used.
System action: Processing continues using default settings.
User response: Ensure that the configuration file exists, and enter the command again.

---

**ACN5052E**  An error occurred trying to set the preference preference.

Explanation: An error occurred while writing to the preferences file.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: View any other messages that were displayed. Fix any of the problems indicated and enter the command again.

---

**ACN5053E**  The value for the preference preference is not valid. See the TDPExcc HELP SET output or the User’s Guide for valid SET command parameters.

Explanation: The preference being set is not valid.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Run the "tdpexcc help set" command or see the User’s Guide for valid SET command parameters.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>System action</th>
<th>User response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACN5054I</td>
<td>The preference has been set successfully.</td>
<td>The preference was set successfully.</td>
<td>Processing ends.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN5055E</td>
<td>The Microsoft Exchange API could not be loaded.</td>
<td>If running on Microsoft Exchange 5.5, the dll that is attempting to load is edbbcli.dll. If running on a later version of Microsoft Exchange, the dll that is attempting to load is esebcli2.dll.</td>
<td>Processing ends.</td>
<td>Ensure that the Microsoft Exchange Server has been correctly installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN5056I</td>
<td>The log file log file could not be pruned.</td>
<td>An attempt to prune the log was unsuccessful.</td>
<td>Processing continues.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN5057I</td>
<td>The log file log file has been pruned successfully.</td>
<td>The specified log file was pruned successfully.</td>
<td>Processing continues.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN5058W</td>
<td>The length of the log file name is greater than the maximum allowed.</td>
<td>Processing will continue using a log file name of logfile in the current directory.</td>
<td>Processing continues creating and using a log file in the current directory.</td>
<td>Update the log file name using a fully qualified path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN5059W</td>
<td>The log file log file cannot be opened for writing. There will be no logging of events.</td>
<td>The specified log file could not be opened for append and logging of events will not occur. The log file may be read-only or the log file name is not valid.</td>
<td>Processing continues without logging.</td>
<td>Determine why the log could not be opened. You may need to ensure that the log file is not read-only, or ensure that a valid drive or partition is specified in the log file name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN5060E</td>
<td>A Tivoli Storage Manager API error has occurred.</td>
<td>A Tivoli Storage Manager API api error has occurred.</td>
<td>Processing ends.</td>
<td>Try the operation again. If the error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN5061E</td>
<td>A Microsoft Exchange api error has occurred.</td>
<td>A Microsoft Exchange api error has occurred.</td>
<td>Processing ends.</td>
<td>Try the operation again. If the error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN5062E</td>
<td>The version of Microsoft Exchange that is running is not a supported version for IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail.</td>
<td>IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Mail has detected a version of Microsoft Exchange Server that is not supported.</td>
<td>Processing ends.</td>
<td>Refer to the software requirements section of the product documentation to view a list of the supported versions of Microsoft Exchange Server. If the version of Microsoft Exchange Server running is a supported version, try the operation again. If the error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN5063E</td>
<td>An error occurred trying to get the Microsoft Exchange version information. It could be a problem with the registry. Or, a Microsoft Exchange Server is not installed on this machine.</td>
<td>An attempt was made to read the registry to determine the level of Microsoft Exchange that is currently running. This attempt failed.</td>
<td>Processing ends.</td>
<td>Determine if the registry has been corrupted. Also, ensure that the Microsoft Exchange Server is installed on this machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACN5064W</td>
<td>The service cannot be started when doing a restore.</td>
<td>A request was made to restore the listed database. However, the service associated with this database has already started. The service needs to be stopped in order to do this restore.</td>
<td>Processing ends.</td>
<td>Stop the associated service and enter the restore command again.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ACN5065E All of the services associated with this restore are running.

**Explanation:** A request was made to restore several databases. However, all of the services associated with these databases are running. The services need to be stopped in order to do this restore.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Stop the associated services and enter the restore command again.

ACN5066W The storage group `<storagegroup>` does not exist.

**Explanation:** The storage group that was entered that does not exist on the server specified.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Enter the command specifying a storage group that exists.

ACN5067E None of the storage groups or databases entered exist. Or, if they do exist, and you are using Exchange 2000 or Exchange 2003, the databases have not been dismounted.

**Explanation:** The storage groups that were entered either do not exist on the Microsoft Exchange Server or the databases within the storage groups have not been dismounted.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Verify that the storage groups or databases exist and that the databases have been dismounted before starting the restore.

ACN5068W The database `<databasename>` does not exist in the storage group `<storagegroup>`.

**Explanation:** The database that was entered does not exist in the storage group that was entered.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Enter the command again specifying a valid database name that exists in a valid storage group.

ACN5069W The database `<database>` in the storage group `<storagegroup>` is not dismounted.

**Explanation:** While examining the list of databases to restore, it was determined that not all of the databases within the specified storage groups were dismounted.

**System action:** Processing continues skipping over the listed databases and storage groups.

**User response:** Ensure that the databases are dismounted and enter the command again.

ACN5070W The Directory Service is not running. The Directory will not be backed up.

**Explanation:** A request was made to backup the Directory service. However, the Directory service needs to be running in order to do the backup.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Start the Directory service and enter the backup command again.

ACN5071W The Information Store is not running. The Information Store will not be backed up.

**Explanation:** A request was made to backup the Information Store. However, the Information Store needs to be running in order to do the backup.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Start the Information Store and enter the backup command again.

ACN5072W Databases in storage group `<storage group>` are dismounted -- skipping.

**Explanation:** A request was made to backup a set of storage groups. However, some databases in this storage group are not mounted. All of the databases need to be mounted in order to backup this storage group.

**System action:** Processing continues, but dismounted databases are skipped.

**User response:** Ensure that all of the databases are mounted in the storage group and start the backup for the storage group again.

ACN5073E None of the storage groups entered are in a state to be backed up.

**Explanation:** A request was made to backup a set of storage groups. However, each of the storage groups entered has at least one database that is dismounted.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Ensure that all of the databases are mounted in the storage groups and start the backup for the storage groups again.

ACN5074E None of the databases or storage groups entered exist.

**Explanation:** A request was made to backup a set of storage groups or databases that do not. The storage group and database names might not have been entered using the correct casing.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** Ensure that the correct casing is used when entering the list of databases or storage groups to be backed up. Enter the backup command again.

ACN5076W Unable to inactivate all previous backup objects.

**Explanation:** A request to inactivate some previous backup objects failed.

**System action:** Processing ends.

**User response:** When the next full backup of the database is run, another attempt will be made to inactivate the failed objects.
ACN5083I  All of the storage groups entered have been excluded.
Explanation: An attempt was made to do a backup. However, the storage groups or databases entered have been excluded by an exclude statement in the options file.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: If you want these storage groups or databases backed up, modify the exclude statements in your options file.

ACN5084W  IS was not input as one of the parts to restore. The partial option will be ignored.
Explanation: A request was made to restore either the private or public part of the Information Store. However, the IS was not input as one of the parts to restore.
System action: Processing continues ignoring the partial option.
User response: To restore either the public or private part of the Information Store, enter IS as an input.

ACN5086W  None of the storage groups entered exist. Or, if doing a DBCOPY backup, the database entered does not exist.
Explanation: A storage group was entered that does not exist on the server specified. Or, if a DBCOPY backup was entered, the dbname specified does not exist on the Microsoft Exchange Server.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Enter the command specifying a storage group or dbname that exists.

ACN5087E  PASSWORDACCESS is Generate. Either the stored password is incorrect or there is no stored password. If you do not have a stored password, use of the -TSMPassword=xxx option will set and store your password.
Explanation: The client options file has the PASSWORDACCESS option set to generate. Currently, there is no password that has been stored. An initial password needs to be stored.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Invoke the command again using the -TSMPassword option. Any subsequent commands should then complete without specifying a password.

ACN5140I  Storage Group <storagegroup> does not exist - skipping.
Explanation: The storage group that was specified by the user is not found on this Exchange server.
System action: This storage group is skipped.
User response: Ensure that the storage group name is spelled correctly and enter the command again.

ACN5141I  Database <database>, Storage Group <storagegroup> does not exist - skipping.
Explanation: This combination of storage group and database name that was specified is not found on this Microsoft Exchange server.
System action: The storage group and database are skipped.
User response: Ensure that the storage group name and database name are spelled correctly and enter the command again.

ACN5142E  No storage group was found that matches the request.
Explanation: The storage groups or databases could not be found on this Microsoft Exchange server.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Ensure that the storage group or database names are spelled correctly and enter the command again.

ACN5209I  There are no backups matching the server name servername and the following filespecs: filespecs.
Explanation: There are no database backups on the Tivoli Storage Manager server for the specified server name.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: None

ACN5228I  Data Protection for Exchange is not configured for VSS operations.
Explanation: Data Protection for Exchange has not been configured to perform VSS operations.
System action: None.
User response: In order to perform VSS operations, the Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services - Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module must be installed and the Data Protection for Exchange LOCALDSMAGENTNODE preference must be set correctly. Refer to the Data Protection for Exchange User's Guide for details on configuring the client for VSS operations.

ACN5229E  Error obtaining VSS information from Local DSMAgent Node: 'localdsmagentnode'.
Explanation: Data Protection for Exchange attempted to obtain VSS information through the specified LOCALDSMAGENTNODE but failed. The error message encountered is also displayed.
System action: VSS information is not displayed.
User response: Refer to the error message displayed along with this message.
ACN5237E  Unable to communicate with the Microsoft Exchange Server.
Explanation: An attempt was made to communicate with the Microsoft Exchange Server that was entered. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Ensure that the name of the Microsoft Exchange server that was entered is valid. Also, ensure that the Microsoft Exchange server is running.

ACN5238E  Unable to retrieve the domain information for the Microsoft Exchange Server.
Explanation: An attempt was made to retrieve the domain information for the Microsoft Exchange Server. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Ensure that the Microsoft Exchange server is running properly.

ACN5239E  Unable to retrieve the storage group information.
Explanation: An attempt was made to retrieve the storage group information for the Microsoft Exchange Server. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Ensure that the Microsoft Exchange Server is running properly.

ACN5240E  Unable to retrieve the database information.
Explanation: An attempt was made to retrieve the database information for the Microsoft Exchange Server. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Ensure that the Microsoft Exchange Server is running properly.

ACN5241E  The Microsoft Exchange Information Store is currently not running.
Explanation: An attempt was made to retrieve the Microsoft Exchange Server information. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: In order to retrieve the Microsoft Exchange Server information, the Microsoft Exchange Information Store needs to be running. Start this service to get the requested information.

ACN5302E  Unable to get the value for the Site from the registry.
Explanation: An attempt was made to read the registry to determine the site for the Microsoft Exchange Server. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Determine if there is a problem with the registry or ensure that the Microsoft Exchange Server is installed properly.

ACN5303E  Unable to get the value for Circular Logging from the registry.
Explanation: An attempt was made to read the registry to determine the Circular Logging setting for either the IS or the DIR of the Microsoft Exchange Server. This attempt failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Determine if there is a problem with the registry or ensure that the Microsoft Exchange Server is installed properly.

ACN5304E  Unable to open service to determine if running or not.
Explanation: An attempt to open a service failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Determine if there is a problem with the Microsoft Exchange server.

ACN5305E  Unable to query service information.
Explanation: An attempt to query specific service information failed.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Determine if there is a problem with the Microsoft Exchange server.

ACN5306E  An unknown Exchange API error has occurred.
Explanation: An Exchange API error has occurred but the associated error message could not be found. The Windows NT event log may contain more information.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: If the Windows NT event log does not help resolve the problem, verify the Exchange Server installation and retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.

ACN5307E  The Exchange server application is not registered for backup.
Explanation: The Exchange server application must be registered for backup with the Windows Server. The Windows NT event log may contain more information.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: If the Windows NT event log does not help resolve the problem, verify the Exchange Server installation and retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5352E</th>
<th>The Exchange server application is not registered for offline restore.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> The Exchange server application must be registered for offline restore with the Windows Server. The Windows NT event log may contain more information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing ends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> If the Windows NT event log does not help resolve the problem, verify the Exchange Server installation and retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5353E</th>
<th>The Exchange server application is not registered for online restore.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> The Exchange server application must be registered for online restore with the Windows Server. The Windows NT event log may contain more information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing ends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> If the Windows NT event log does not help resolve the problem, verify the Exchange Server installation and retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5354E</th>
<th>The storage group was not found.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> The specified storage group name was not found.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing ends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> Verify the command input and retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5355E</th>
<th>The database was not found.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> The specified database name was not found.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing ends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> Verify the command input and retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5356E</th>
<th>The database file name is undefined.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> Every Microsoft Exchange database must specify a database file name.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing ends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> Verify the database properties and retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5357W</th>
<th>The truncation of the transaction log failed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> The truncation of the transaction log failed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing continues.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> Refer to other messages that are displayed to determine the problem.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5358E</th>
<th>A Microsoft Exchange API protocol error has occurred.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> An unrecoverable Microsoft Exchange API protocol error has occurred.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing ends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> Contact your service representative.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5359E</th>
<th>An attempt was made to get the TEMP environment variable. This attempt failed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> The TEMPLGORESTOREPATH option was not set for the restore. Therefore, an attempt was made to get the TEMP environment variable for the machine. This attempt failed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing ends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> Ensure that the TEMP environment variable is set for this machine. You can also use the TEMPLGORESTOREPATH option with the restore.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5360E</th>
<th>The /ERASEExistingdata option is not allowed during a partial restore.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> A partial storage group restore was requested with the /ERASEExistingdata option. The /ERASEExistingdata option is not allowed during a partial restore.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing ends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> Enter the command to restore the entire storage group or enter the command without the /ERASEExistingdata option.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5361E</th>
<th>It is invalid to have an &quot;&quot; within a storage group name.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> An attempt was made to backup a storage group that contains an &quot;&quot;. It is invalid to have an &quot;&quot; in a storage group name.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing continues, but this storage group will not be backed up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> Rename the storage group, otherwise this storage group cannot be backed up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5362W</th>
<th>The filesystem &lt;filespace&gt; in an invalid filesystem name.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> The filesystem displayed in the message exists, but is an invalid filesystem.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing continues, but this filesystem will not be used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> Ensure that the storage group name does not contain invalid characters. Refer to the Microsoft Exchange documentation for the list of invalid characters.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACN5500E</th>
<th>The MultiByteToWideChar() function failed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> An internal error occurred.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System action:</strong> Processing ends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User response:</strong> Retry the operation. If this error persists, contact your service representative.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ACN5501E  The WideCharToMultiByte() function failed.
Explanation:  An internal error occurred.
System action:  Processing ends.
User response:  Retry the operation. If this error persists, contact your service representative.

ACN5705W  An error was encountered with Tivoli Storage Manager API initialization, rc = returncode. Examine the dsierror.log for more information or determine if the TSM API is installed properly.
Explanation:  An attempt was made to run setup for the Tivoli Storage Manager API. However, errors were encountered.
System action:  Processing continues.
User response:  Examine the dsierror.log file to determine the problem. If this file does not exist, it is possible that the TSM API is not installed properly. If this is the case, reinstall the TSM API and try running the command again.

ACN5706I  The logfile_name log file did not need pruning.
Explanation:  The log file specified did not need to be pruned.
System action:  Processing continues.
User response:  The log file will automatically be pruned at a later date. If the log file is too large now, lower the number of days the log entries are retained.

ACN5707W  The logfile_name log file could not be opened for writing. The log was not pruned and there will be no logging of events.
Explanation:  The log could not be opened for append. Therefore, there will be no logging done and the request to prune was not done.
System action:  Processing continues without logging and without pruning.
User response:  Determine why the log could not be opened. You may need to ensure that the file is not read-only, or ensure that a valid drive or partition is specified with the log file name.

ACN5724I  No databases have been selected for backup.
Explanation:  The Backup button was pressed but no databases have been selected in the list in the graphical user interface.
System action:  Processing stops.
User response:  Select a database and press the Backup button.

ACN5725I  No Storage Groups have been selected for backup.
Explanation:  The Backup button was pressed but no Storage Groups have been selected in the tree or list in the graphical user interface.
System action:  Processing stops.
User response:  Select a Storage Group and press the Backup button.

ACN5741I  No Backups have been selected for restore.
Explanation:  The Restore button was pressed but nothing was selected in the tree or list view.
System action:  Processing stops.
User response:  Make a selection in the tree or list view and press the Restore button again.

ACN5758W  At least one of the database’s services that is selected for restore is running. Do you want to stop the service(s)?
Explanation:  A service that you are trying to restore is running. The service cannot be running in order to perform the restore.
System action:  None.
User response:  Choose the desired response and continue.

ACN5759W  At least one of the databases that is selected for restore is mounted. Do you want to dismount the database(s)?
Explanation:  A database you are trying to restore is mounted.
System action:  None.
User response:  Click ‘OK’ to dismount and continue, or cancel to stop.

ACN5766E  Unable to dismount database database in storage group storage group. Do you want to continue the restore process?
Explanation:  An error occurred while trying to dismount a database.
System action:  None.
User response:  Press OK to continue the restore or press cancel to stop.

ACN5798E  MS Exchange API api name failed with HRESULT: retcode -
Explanation:  A Microsoft Exchange API error occurred during an operation. The specific API function that failed along with the HRESULT code of the failure and possible message associated with that error is displayed.
System action:  Processing ends.
User response:  If the Windows Event Log does not help resolve the problem, stop and restart the Exchange server and retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.
ACN5800E Backup is corrupt. See log file for additional information.
Explanation: When attempting to process an Exchange backup on the Tivoli Storage Manager Server, not all required objects were present. The operation cannot proceed. The specific backup affected is logged.
System action: Processing ends.
User response: Retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.

ACN5802T When a Recovery Storage Group exists, mailbox and public folder databases cannot be restored in the same operation. ACTION: Please select either a mailbox OR public folder database for restore.

ACN5803T When performing a mailbox database restore to a Recovery Storage Group, the Replay Restored Logs ONLY option must be specified or the restore may fail. ACTION: The Replay Restored Logs ONLY option will AUTOMATICALLY be used on the restore. Do you wish to continue with the restore?

ACN5805E Restore failed. File already exists.
Explanation: The specified file already exists in the restore (/INTO) path. The RESTOREFILES command is designed not to overwrite existing files.
System action: The restore operation fails and processing ends.
User response: If you want to restore the specified file, you must first delete the file that exists in the restore (/INTO) path and retry the operation or specify a different restore (/INTO) path and retry the operation.

ACN5810E Restoring Legacy backups and VSS backups in the same restore operation is not supported. Retry the restores in separate operations.
Explanation: At least one VSS backup object and one Legacy backup object were selected for a restore in the same operation. This is not supported.
System action: The restore operation is canceled.
User response: Retry the restores specifying the Legacy backups and VSS backups in separate operations.

ACN5811E Invalid command. Data Protection for Exchange only supports VSS backup types of FULL and COPY.
Explanation: An invalid backup type was specified on the VSS backup request. Data Protection for Exchange supports backup types of FULL and COPY when using the VSS backup method.

System action: The backup operation is canceled.
User response: Retry the backup operation specifying a supported VSS backup type.

ACN5812E Invalid command. Data Protection for Exchange does not support OFFLOAD with the Legacy backup method.
Explanation: The OFFLOAD option was specified when using the Legacy backup method. Data Protection for Exchange does not support offload with the Legacy backup method. Data Protection for Exchange supports offload with the VSS backup method only.
System action: The backup operation is canceled.
User response: Retry the backup operation without specifying the offload option or by specifying the VSS backup method.

ACN5813E Invalid command. Data Protection for Exchange only supports Legacy backups with a backup destination of TSM.
Explanation: An invalid backup destination was specified with the Legacy backup method. Data Protection for Exchange only supports a backup destination of TSM when using the Legacy backup method.
System action: The backup operation is canceled.
User response: Retry the backup operation specifying a backup destination of TSM.

ACN5814E Invalid command. Data Protection for Exchange does not support OFFLOAD with the specified backup destination.
Explanation: The OFFLOAD option was specified with an unsupported backup destination. Data Protection for Exchange only supports offload with a backup destination of TSM.
System action: The backup operation is canceled.
User response: Retry the VSS offloaded backup operation specifying a backup destination of TSM.

ACN5815E The VSS operation failed with rc = returncode.
Explanation: There was a failure when Data Protection for Exchange performed the VSS operation.
System action: The VSS operation stops.
User response: Verify that the Client Acceptor Daemon (CAD) is installed, configured, and running properly on the machine. Retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.

ACN5816E Data Protection for Exchange is not able to run VSS operations. You must be running Exchange Server 2003 (or later) and have the Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services - Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module installed.
Explanation: In order to perform VSS operations, Data
Protection for Exchange verifies that the Exchange Server level is at least Exchange Server 2003 and that the Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services - Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module is installed. If the Tivoli Storage Manager for Copy Services - Microsoft Exchange VSS Integration Module is installed, there will be a license file, acesec.lic, in the Data Protection for Exchange installation directory.

System action: The operation stops.

User response: Verify that the prerequisites identified above are met and retry the operation. If the error persists, contact your service representative.

---

ACN5817E  Missing, blank, or invalid Local DSMAGENT Node Name is not allowed.

Explanation: In order to run VSS operations, Data Protection for Exchange verifies that the Local DSMAGENT Node Name is specified and valid. This error indicates that the Local DSMAGENT Node Name is missing, blank, or invalid.

System action: The operation stops.

User response: Set the Local DSMAGENT Node Name to a valid value and retry the operation.

---

ACN5818E  Invalid command. Data Protection for Exchange only supports restoring VSS backup types of FULL and COPY.

Explanation: An invalid backup type was specified on the VSS restore request. Data Protection for Exchange supports restoring backups of type FULL and COPY.

System action: The restore operation is canceled.

User response: Retry the restore operation specifying a supported VSS backup type.

---

ACN5819E  Multiple backup objects were found for the specified storage group(s) and backup destination. Use the OBJECT= and BACKUPDESTINATION= options to identify which specific backup object to restore.

Explanation: The backup object specified for the VSS restore operation was not specific enough to be unique. More information is required in order to restore the correct backup object.

System action: The restore operation is canceled.

User response: Retry the restore operation specifying the /OBJECT= and /BACKUPDESTINATION parameters.

---

ACN5820E  There were no Exchange backups found on the Tivoli Storage Manager server matching the specified criteria.

Explanation: A query was issued to the Tivoli Storage Manager server to find the Data Protection for Exchange backups that match the specified search criteria. There were no backups found.

System action: None.

User response: None.
Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user’s responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
Information Enabling Requests
Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.
Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo and the following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

AIX
AS/400
DB2
DFS
DFSMS/MVS
DFSMShsm
DFSMSrmm
DPI
Enterprise Storage Server
ESCON
eServer
FICON
FlashCopy
HACMP
Informix
iSeries
Lotus
Lotus 1-2-3
Lotus Approach
Lotus Domino
Lotus Notes
Magstar
MVS
NetView
OpenEdition
OS/2
OS/390
OS/400
Passport Advantage
pSeries
RACF
Rational
Redbooks
RS/6000
S/390
SANergy
SecureWay
StorageSmart
SystemView
Tivoli
Tivoli Enterprise Console
Tivoli Management Enterprise
TotalStorage
TME
VTAM
WebSphere
z/OS
zSeries

Intel, Intel Inside (logos), MMX and Pentium are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.
Glossary

The terms in this glossary are defined as they pertain to the Tivoli Storage Manager library. If you do not find a term you are looking for, you can refer to the IBM Dictionary of Computing at URL:

www.ibm.com/networking/nsg/nsgmain.htm

This glossary may include terms and definitions from:

- The Information Technology Vocabulary, developed by Subcommittee 1, Joint Technical Committee 1, of the International Organization for Standardization and the International Electrotechnical Commission (ISO/IEC JTC2/SC1).

A

active policy set. The policy set within a policy domain that contains the most recently activated policy. This policy set is used by all client nodes assigned to the current policy domain. See policy set.

active version. The most recent backup copy of a file stored in Tivoli Storage Manager storage for a file that currently exists on a file server or workstation. An active version remains active and exempt from deletion until:
- Replaced by a new backup version.
- Tivoli Storage Manager detects, during an incremental backup, that the user has deleted the original file from a file server or workstation.

administrative client. A program that runs on a file server, workstation, or mainframe. This program lets administrators monitor and control Tivoli Storage Manager servers using Tivoli Storage Manager administrator commands. Contrast with backup-archive client.

administrator. A user who is registered to the server as an administrator. Administrators may possess one or more privilege classes. Administrators can use the administrative client to enter Tivoli Storage Manager server commands and queries according to their privileges.

application program interface (API). A set of functions that applications running on a client platform can call to store, query, and retrieve objects from Tivoli Storage Manager storage.

archive. A function permitting users to copy one or more files to a long-term storage device. Archive copies can:
- Accompany descriptive information
- Imply data compression software usage
- Be retrieved by archive date, file name, or description

Contrast with retrieve.

archive copy. A file or group of files residing in an archive storage pool in Tivoli Storage Manager storage.

archive copy group. A policy object containing attributes that control the generation, destination, and expiration of archived files. The archive copy group belongs to a management class.

archive retention grace period. The number of days Tivoli Storage Manager retains an archived copy when the server is unable to rebind the file to an appropriate management class.

authentication. The process of checking and authorizing a user’s password before permitting user access to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. An administrator with system privilege can enable or disable authentication.

authorization rule. A specification permitting another user to either restore or retrieve a user’s files from Tivoli Storage Manager storage.
backup. A function permitting users to copy one or more files to a storage pool to protect against data loss. Contrast with restore.

backup-archive client. A program that runs on a file server, PC, or workstation and provides a means for Tivoli Storage Manager users to back up, archive, restore, and retrieve files. Contrast with administrative client.

backup copy group. A policy object containing attributes that control the generation, destination, and expiration of backup files. A backup copy group belongs to a management class.

backup version. A backed up file, directory, or file space that resides in a backup storage pool in Tivoli Storage Manager storage. The active version is the most recent backup version. See active version and inactive version.

client. A program running on a file server, PC, workstation, or terminal that requests services of another program called the server. There are two types of Tivoli Storage Manager clients: administrative and backup-archive. See administrative client and backup-archive client.

client domain. The set of drives, file systems, or volumes selected by a user for processing during a backup or archive operation.

client node. A file server or workstation registered with the server on which the backup-archive client program is installed.

client options file. A file that a client can edit, containing a default set of processing options that identify the server, communication method, backup and archive options, space management options, and scheduling options.

client/server. A communications network architecture in which one or more programs (clients) request computing or data services from another program (the server).

closed registration. A registration process in which an Tivoli Storage Manager administrator must register workstations as client nodes with the server. Contrast with open registration.

command line interface. A type of user interface where commands are specified on the command line. Contrast with graphical user interface.

commit. To make changes permanent in the databases files. Changes made to the database files are not permanent until they are committed.

communication method. The method by which a client and server exchange information.

communication protocol. A set of defined interfaces that permits computers to communicate with each other.

compression. The process of saving storage space by eliminating empty fields or unnecessary data to shorten the length of the file. In Tivoli Storage Manager, compression can occur at a workstation before files are backed up or archived to server storage. On some types of tape drives, hardware compression can be used.

copy backup. A copy backup is similar to a full backup except that transaction log files are not cleared after the backup. A backup copy can be used to make a full backup of the Exchange Server database without disrupting any backup procedures that use incremental or differential backups.

copy group. An Tivoli Storage Manager policy object that determines how Tivoli Storage Manager backs up or archives files. Copy groups belong to management classes. There are two copy groups:

• Backup copy group—determines how Tivoli Storage Manager backs up or archives files.
• Archive copy group—determines how Tivoli Storage Manager archives files.
D

default management class. A management class assigned to a policy set. This class is used to govern backed up or archived files when a user does not explicitly associate a file with a specific management class through the include-exclude list.

differential backup. A differential backup backs up only transaction logs, but does not clear them. If you perform a full backup and then perform only differential backups, the last full backup plus the latest differential backup has all data needed to bring the database back to the most recent state. This type of backup is also called a cumulative incremental backup.

domain. See policy domain or client domain.

dsm.opt file. See options file. Also called client options file.

E

error log. A text file written on disk that contains Tivoli Storage Manager processing error messages. These errors are detected and saved by the Tivoli Storage Manager server.

exclude. The process of identifying files in an include-exclude list. This process prevents the files from being backed up or migrated whenever a user or schedule enters an incremental or selective backup operation.

expiration. The process in which files are identified for deletion because their expiration date or retention period has passed. Backed up or archived files are marked for deletion based on the criteria defined in the backup or archive copy group.

F

file server. A dedicated computer and its peripheral storage devices connected to a local area network that stores both programs and files shared by users on the network.

file space. A logical space on the Tivoli Storage Manager server that contains a group of files. In Tivoli Storage Manager, users can restore, retrieve, or delete file spaces from Tivoli Storage Manager storage.

full backup. A full backup backs up the specified database as well as its associated transaction logs. After the database and logs are backed up, the log files are deleted.

G

generate password. Processing that stores a new password in an encrypted password file when the old password expires. Automatic generation of a password prevents password prompting. Password generation can be set in the options file (passwordaccess option). See options file.

graphical user interface (GUI). A type of user interface that takes advantage of a high-resolution monitor, includes a combination of graphics, the object-action paradigm, and the use of pointing devices, menu bars, overlapping windows, and icons. Contrast with command line interface.

GUI. Graphical user interface.

I

inactive version. A copy of a backup file in Tivoli Storage Manager storage that either is not the most recent version, or the corresponding original file was deleted from the client file system. Inactive backup versions are eligible for expiration according to the management class assigned to the file.

include-exclude file. A file containing statements to determine the files to back up and the associated management classes to use for backup or archive. See include-exclude list.
**include-exclude list.**  A list of include and exclude options that include or exclude selected files for backup. An exclude option identifies files that should not be backed up. An include option identifies files that are exempt from the exclusion rules or assigns a management class to a file or a group of files for backup or archive services. The include-exclude list is defined in one or more include-exclude files or in the client options file. The include-exclude list may contain entries from any or all of the following sources: the client options file, separate include-exclude files, or the Tivoli Storage Manager server. See *options file*.

**incremental backup.**  An incremental backup only backs up the transaction logs and then clears them. Restoration of an Exchange Server database from an incremental backup requires a:

- Restore of the last full backup.
- Restore of any other incremental backups performed between the full backup and this incremental backup.
- Restore of this incremental backup.

**L**

**LAN.**  Local area network.

**legacy backup.**  A specialized API backup that functions with the Exchange server storage engine.

**legacy restore.**  A specialized API restore that functions with the Exchange server storage engine to restore legacy backups (Exchange database files and log files) from Tivoli Storage Manager server storage to their original location.

**local.**  In a Data Protection for Exchange VSS environment, local refers to data that is stored on shadow volumes localized to a disk storage subsystem.

**Local Area Network (LAN).**  A variable-sized communications network placed in one location. LAN connects servers, PCs, workstations, a network operating system, access methods, and communications software and links.

**M**

**management class.**  A Tivoli Storage Manager policy object that is a named collection of copy groups. A management class is associated with a file to specify how the server should manage backup versions or archive copies of workstation files.

**N**

**node.**  See *client node*.

**node name.**  A unique name used to identify a workstation, file server, or PC to the server.

**O**

**open registration.**  A registration process in which users can register their own workstations or PCs as client nodes with the server. Contrast with *closed registration*.

**options file.**  A file that contains processing options. Identifies Tivoli Storage Manager servers, specifies communication methods, defines scheduling options, selects backup, archive, restore, and retrieve options. Also called the client options file.

**P**

**policy domain.**  A Tivoli Storage Manager policy object that lets Tivoli Storage Manager group client nodes by the policies that govern their files and by the administrator who manages the policies. The policy domain contains one or more policy sets.

**policy set.**  A Tivoli Storage Manager policy object that specifies the management classes that are available to groups of users. More than one policy set can exist. However, only one policy set at a time can be active.

**progress indicator.**  A control used to inform a user about the progress of a process.
R

recovery log. A log of updates that are about to be written to the databases. The log can be used to recover from system and media failures.

registration. The process of identifying a client node or administrator to the server by specifying a user ID, password, and contact information. For client nodes, a policy domain, compression status, and deletion privileges are also specified.

registry. A central database in Windows that contains information about hardware, applications, and operating system settings for each machine on the network. Provides security and control over system, security, and account settings.

restore. A function that permits users to copy a version of a backup file from the storage pool to a workstation or file server. The backup copy in the storage pool is not affected. Contrast with backup.

retention. The amount of time, in days, that inactive backed up or archived files are retained in the storage pool before they are deleted. The following copy group attributes define retention: retain extra versions, retain only version, retain version.

retrieve. A function permitting users to copy an archived file from the storage pool to the workstation or file server. The archive copy in the storage pool is not affected. Contrast with archive.

S

scheduling. A function permitting an administrator to schedule backup and archive operations from a central location. Operations can be scheduled on a periodic basis or on an explicit date.

scheduling mode. The type of scheduling operation for the client-server node. Tivoli Storage Manager supports two scheduling modes: client-polling and server-prompted.

scroll. Move through a list of items in a window by operating the scrollbars with the mouse cursor.

select. Choose an item from a list or group of items.

selective backup. A function permitting users to back up files from a client domain. These files are not excluded in the include-exclude list and meet the requirement for serialization in the backup copy group of the management class assigned to each file. Contrast with incremental backup.

server. A program running on a mainframe, workstation, or file server that provides shared services such as backup and archive to other various (often remote) programs (called clients).

server-prompted scheduling. A client-server communication technique where the server contacts the client node when tasks need to be done.

session. A period of time in which a user can communicate with a server to perform backup, archive, restore, or retrieve requests.

space management. The process of keeping sufficient free storage space available on a local file system for new data and making the most efficient and economical use of distributed storage resources.

Tivoli Storage Manager. A client/server program that provides storage management to customers in a multivendor computer environment.

storage pool. A named set of storage volumes used as the destination of backup, archive, or migrated copies.

T


timeout. A time event involving:
• An event that happens at the end of a predetermined period of time that began at the happening of another specified event.
• A time interval allotted for certain operations to happen. For example, response to polling or addressing before system operation is interrupted and must be restarted.
• A terminal feature that logs off a user if an entry is not made within a specified period of time.


V

Version. Storage management policy may allow back-level copies of backed up objects to be kept at the server whenever an object is newly backed up. The most recent backed up copy is called the “active” version. Earlier copies are “inactive” versions. The following backup copy group attributes define version criteria: versions data exists, and versions data deleted.

VSS Backup. A backup that uses Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service technology to produce an online snapshot (point-in-time consistent copy) of Exchange data that can be stored on local shadow volumes or on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage.

VSS Fast Restore. A function that uses a VSS software provider to restore VSS Backups (Exchange database files and log files) that reside on local shadow volumes.

VSS Instant Restore. A function that uses a SAN Volume Controller to copy a set of target volumes (that contain a valid snapshot) back to the original source volumes using snapshot mechanisms.

VSS Off-loaded backup. A backup that uses a VSS hardware provider (installed on an alternate machine) to move Exchange data to the Tivoli Storage Manager server. This type of backup shifts the backup load from the production machine to another machine.

VSS Restore. A function that uses a VSS software provider to restore VSS Backups (Exchange database files and log files) that reside on Tivoli Storage Manager server storage to their original location.

W

Wildcard character. An asterisk (*) or question mark (?) character used to represent multiple (*) or single (?) characters when searching for various combinations of characters in alphanumeric and symbolic names.

Workstation. A programmable high-level workstation (usually on a network) with its own processing hardware such as a high-performance personal computer. In a local area network, a personal computer that acts as a single user or client. A workstation can also be used as a server.
Index

A
active parameter
and query tsm command 65
all parameter
and query tsm command 65

B
backup
automating 115
copy
description 5
database copy
description 5
differential
description 5
full
description 5
strategy 11
full plus differentials
strategy 11
full plus incremental
strategy 11
incremental
description 5
KMS
command line 72
legacy
GUI 50
SRS
command line 72
storage group 3
command line 71
Tivoli Storage Manager
scheduler 115
transaction log 3
types 3
VSS
GUI 50, 51
Backup and Restore Window (GUI) 49
backup command
and /backupdestination
parameter 71
and /backupmethod parameter 71
and /buffers parameter 72
and /configfile parameter 72
and /excapplication parameter 72
and /excserver parameter 73
and /logfile parameter 73
and /logprune parameter 73
and /mountwait parameter 74
and /offload parameter 74
and /quiet parameter 74
and /skipintegritycheck
parameter 74
and /smnode parameter 74
and /tsmfile parameter 74
and /tsmpassword parameter 75
element 75, 76, 77
backup command (continued)
overview 69
syntax diagram 70
backup strategy 11
full backup 11
full plus differentials 11
full plus incremental 11
Tivoli Storage Manager versus local
shadow volumes 26
VSS and Legacy together 12
backupdestination parameter
and backup command 71
and restore command 81
and set command 100
backupmethod parameter
and backup command 71
and GUI 44
and restore command 82
and set command 100
books
see publications x
buffering
description 15
buffers parameter
and backup command 72
and GUI 45
and restore command 82
and restorefiles command 92
and set command 101
buffersize parameter
and backup command 72
and GUI 45
and restore command 82
and restorefiles command 92
and set command 101

c
changetsmpassword command
and /configfile parameter 97
and /logfile parameter 98
and /logprune parameter 98
and /smnode parameter 99
and /tsmfile parameter 99
example 99
overview 97
syntax diagram 97
changetsmpassword parameter
and GUI 47
circular logging 5
cluster
command line invocation 16
Data Protection for Exchange
support 16
GUI 54
installing Data Protection for
Exchange 23
clusternode option 32
command line interface
cluster 16
help 104
command line interface (continued)
overview 56
command line parameters
/active
and query tsm 65
/all
and query tsm 65
/backuptarget
and backup 71
and restore 81
and set 100
/backuption
and backup 71
and restore 82
and restorefiles 92
and set 101
/buffersize
and backup 72
and restore 82
and restorefiles 92
and set 101
/configfile
and backup 72
and changetsmpassword 97
and GUI invocation 48
and query exchange 57
and query tdp 61
and query tsm 65
and restore 82
and restorefiles 92
and set 103
/dateformat
and set 101
/exapplication
and backup 72
and restore 83
and restorefiles 92
/exserver
and backup 73
and cluster 48
and GUI invocation 48
and query exchange 58
and restore 83
/fromexserver
and query tsm 65
and restore 83
and restorefiles 92
/instantrestore
and restore 83
/into
and restorefiles 92
/language
and set 101
/localdsmagentnode
and set 101
/logfile
and backup 73
command line parameters (continued)
/logfile (continued)
   and changetsmpassword 98
   and query exchange 58
   and query tdp 61
   and query tsm 65
   and restore 83
   and restorefiles 93
   and set 101
/logprune
   and backup 73
   and changetsmpassword 98
   and query exchange 58
   and query tdp 62
   and query tsm 66
   and restore 84
   and restorefiles 93
   and set 102
/mountdatabases
   and restore 84
/mountwait
   and backup 74
   and restore 84
   and restorefiles 93
   and set 102
/numberformat
   and set 102
/object
   and restore 85
   and restorefiles 94
/offload
   and backup 74
/partial
   and restore 85
   and restorefiles 94
/quiet
   and backup 74
   and restore 85
   and restorefiles 94
/recover
   and restore 85
/remotedsmagnetnode
   and set 102
/skipintegritycheck
   and backup 74
/temlogrestorepath
   and restore 86
   and set 102
/timeformat
   and set 103
/tsmnode
   and backup 74
   and changetsmpassword 99
   and query tsm 66
   and restore 86
   and restorefiles 94
/tsmnopfile
   and backup 74
   and changetsmpassword 99
   and GUI invocation 48
   and query tsm 66
   and restore 86
   and restorefiles 94
/tsmopassword
   and backup 75
   and query tsm command 66
   and restore 86
command line parameters (continued)
/tsmopassword (continued)
   and restorefiles 94
commands
   backup 69
   changetsmpassword 97
   and GUI 47
   and help 104
   preference commands overview 97
   query commands overview 57
   query exchange 57
   query tdp 61
   query tsm 64
   restore 78
   set 100
communication protocol option 32
compressalways option 33
compression option 33
configfile parameter
   and backup command 72
   and changetsmpassword
   command 97
   and GUI invocation 48
   and query exchange command 57
   and query tdp command 61
   and query tsm command 65
   and restore command 82
   and restorefiles command 92
   and set command 103
configuration
   list of applications 25
   options 31
   overview 26
   procedure 37
   Exchange Server 38
   Off-loaded backups 40
   Tivoli Storage Manager server 37
   verify 41
   considerations (installation) 21
conventions
   typeface xii
   copy backup
   description 5
   copy group 28
   customer support
   See Software Support

D
Data Protection for Exchange
advanced restore procedures 129
backup strategy 11
backup types 3
buffering
   description 15
   cluster support 16
   installation 23
   command line help 104
   commands 56
   configuration parameters 36
   VSS 36
   configuring options 31
   exclude processing 34
   features 2
   new 1
   GUI 43
   include processing 34
Data Protection for Exchange (continued)
include/exclude processing 34
installation
   considerations 21
   environment requirements 19
   hardware requirements 19
   operating system requirements 20
   overview 19
   packages 21
   procedure 22
   software requirements 20
LAN Free
   description 15
   online help 16
   operating environment 2
   overview 1
   performance 15
   policy settings 13
   previous versions 21, 112
   quick start guide 109
   registering 29
   restore types 8
   security 15
   silent installation 123
   supported languages 16
   database copy backup
   description 5
dateformat parameter
   and GUI 45
   and set command 101
Default Backup Destination parameter
   and GUI 46
differential backup
   description 5
domain 27
dsm.opt file
   configuring 31
   clusternode 32
   communication protocol 32
   compressalways 33
   compression 33
   enableclientencryptkey 32
   enablelanfree 32
   encryptiontype 32
   include.encrypt 32
   nodename 32
   passwordaccess 32
   Tivoli Storage Manager
   scheduler 117
dsmcutilex.exe file 32
dsmcutilel.hlp file 32
dsmcutileutil.txt file 32

E
edit menu
   description 44
education
   see Tivoli technical training xi
   enableclientencryptkey option 32
   enablelanfree option 32
   encryption 32
   encryptiontype option 32
   environment requirements 19
   example
   backup command 75, 76, 77
   changetsmpassword command 99
installing Data Protection for Exchange on multiple servers (silent) 123
unattended (silent) 123
instantrestore parameter and restore command 83
Internet searching for problem resolution 132
into parameter and restorefiles command 92
logfile parameter (continued)
and restorefiles command 93
and set command 101
logging
circular 5
logprune parameter
and backup command 73
and changetimestampword command 98
and GUI 45
and query exchange command 58
and query tdp command 62
and query tsm command 66
and restore command 84
and restorefiles command 93
and set command 102
K
KMS
backup command line 72
legacy backup
GUI 50
restore command 53
command line 83
restorefiles command line 92
knowledge bases, searching for problem resolution 132
L
LAN Free 32
description 15
language parameter and GUI 45
and set command 101
languages supported by Data Protection for Exchange 16
legacy backup
KMS
GUI 50
SRS
GUI 50
Legacy backup and VSS 12
hardware requirements 19
method 6
overview 3
quick start guide 109
software requirements 20
Legacy restore
hardware requirements 19
method 9
software requirements 20
list view
description 43
local shadow volumes
storage space 14
localsmagentnode parameter
and GUI 46
and set command 101
logfile parameter
and backup command 73
and changetimestampword command 98
and GUI 45
and query exchange command 58
and query tdp command 61
and query tsm command 65
and restore command 83
logfile parameter (continued)
and restorefiles command 93
and set command 101
logging
circular 5
logprune parameter
and backup command 73
and changetimestampword command 98
and GUI 45
and query exchange command 58
and query tdp command 62
and query tsm command 66
and restore command 84
and restorefiles command 93
and set command 102
M
management class 28
manuals see publications x
menu bar
description 43
messages
GUI 49
verification 42
migration
previous versions 21, 112
mountdatabases parameter and restore command 84
mountwait parameter
and backup command 74
and GUI 44
and restore command 84
and restorefiles command 93
and set command 102
msiexec.exe
used for silent installation 126
N
node name
Data Protection for Exchange recommendations 29
Off-loaded backup 30
proxy nodes 30
VSS 30
nodename option 32
numberformat parameter
and GUI 46
and set command 102
O
object parameter
and backup command 85
and restorefiles command 94
Off-loaded backup
configuration procedure 40
description 8
hardware requirements 19
node names 30
software requirements 20
offload parameter
and backup command 74
online help 16
online publications
accessing x
operating environment 2
operating system requirements 20
options 31, 67, 75, 86, 95
clusternode 32
communication protocol 32
compressalways 33
compression 33
enableclienctencryptedkey 32
enablelanfree 32
cryptotype 32
GUI restore
auto select 47
disable VSS instant restore 54
mountdatabases 54
run recovery 53
Show all objects 47
Show only Active objects 46
include-encrypted 32
nodename 32
passwordaccess 32
vsspolicy 36
ordering publications xi
overview 1
P
parameters
/active
and query tsm command 65
/all
and query tsm command 65
/backu destination
and backup command 71
and restore command 81
and set command 100
/backupmethod
and backup command 71
and restore command 82
and set command 100
/buffers
and backup command 72
and restore command 82
and restorefiles command 92
and set command 101
/buffersize
and backup command 72
and restore command 82
and restorefiles command 92
and set command 101
/configfile
and backup command 72
and changetimestampword command 97
and GUI invocation 48
and query exchange command 57
and query tdp command 61
and query tsm command 65
and restore command 82
and restorefiles command 92
and set command 103
/dateformat
and set command 101
/excapplication
and backup command 72
and set command 101
and restorefiles command 92
and set command 102

parameters (continued)
/excapplication (continued)
and restore command 83
and restorefiles command 92
/excserv
and backup command 73
and cluster 48
and GUI invocation 48
and query exchange command 58
and restore command 83
/fromexcserver
and query tsm command 65
and restore command 83
and restorefiles command 92
/instantrstore
and restore command 83
/into
and restorefiles command 92
/language
and set command 101
/localdsmagentnode
and set command 101
/logfile
and backup command 73
and changetsmpassword
command 98
and query exchange command 58
and query tdp command 61
and query tsm command 65
and restore command 83
and restorefiles command 93
and set command 101
/mountdatabases
and restore command 84
/mountwait
and backup command 74
and restore command 84
and restorefiles command 93
and set command 102
/numberformat
and set command 102
/object
and restore command 85
and restorefiles command 94
/offload
and backup command 74
/partial
and restore command 85
and restorefiles command 94
/quiet
and backup command 74
and restore command 85
and restorefiles command 94
/recover
and restore command 85
/remotedsmagentnode
and set command 102
parameters (continued)
/skipintegritycheck
and backup command 74
templogrestorepath
and restore parameter 86
and set command 102
timeformat
and set command 103
tsmnode
and backup command 74
and changetsmpassword
command 99
and query tsm command 66
and restore command 86
and restorefiles command 94
/tsmoptfile
and backup command 74
and changetsmpassword
command 99
and GUI invocation 48
and query tsm command 66
and restore command 86
and restorefiles command 94
/tsmpassword
and backup command 75
and query tsm command 66
and restore command 86
and restorefiles command 94
backupmethod
and GUI 44
buffers
and GUI 45
buffersize
and GUI 45
dateformat
and GUI 45
Default Backup Destination
and GUI 46
language
and GUI 45
localdsmagentnode
and GUI 46
logfile
and GUI 45
logprune
and GUI 45
mountwait
and GUI 44
numberformat
and GUI 46
remotedsmagentnode
and GUI 46
templogrestorepath
and GUI 44
timeformat
and GUI 46
partial parameter
and restore command 85
and restorefiles command 94
passwordaccess option 32
performance 15
policy set 27
policy settings
copy group 28
Data Protection for Exchange and
Tivoli Storage Manager 13
domain 27
policy settings (continued)
management class 28
policy set 27
recommended 27
storage pool 29
problem determination
describing problems 136
determining business impact 135
submitting problems 136
proxy nodes 30
publications
accessing online x
ordering xi
Q
query exchange command
and /configfile parameter 57
and /excserver parameter 58
and /logfile parameter 58
and /logprune parameter 58
and Recovery Storage Group 57
example 59, 60
overview 57
syntax diagram 57
query tdp command
and /configfile parameter 61
and /logfile parameter 61
and /logprune parameter 62
example 62
overview 61
syntax diagram 61
query tsm command
and /active parameter 65
and /all parameter 65
and /configfile parameter 65
and /fromexcserver parameter 65
and /logfile parameter 65
and /logprune parameter 66
and /tsmnode parameter 66
and /tsmoptfile parameter 66
and /tsmpassword parameter 66
example 67, 68
overview 64
syntax diagram 64
quick start guide 109
quiet parameter
and backup command 74
and restore command 85
and restorefiles command 94
R
READMEDPEXC_enu.htm 19, 21
recover parameter
and restore command 85
Recovery Storage Group
and backup strategy 8
and mounting databases 78
and query exchange command 57
and restore 8, 52
and restore command 78
output example 59
procedure 130
requirements 130
registration 29
removedsmagentnode parameter
and GUI 46
and set command 102
restore
considerations 129
database 8
KMS
command line 83
GUI 53
SRS
command line 83
GUI 53
storage group 8
command line 81
GUI 52
transaction log 8
types 8
restore command
and /backupdestination
parameter 81
and /backupmethod parameter 82
and /buffers parameter 82
and /buffersize parameter 82
and /configfile parameter 82
and /excapplication parameter 83
and /exserver parameter 83
and /fromexserver parameter 83
and /instantrestore parameter 83
and /logfile parameter 83
and /logprune parameter 84
and /mountprune parameter 84
and /mountwait parameter 84
and /object parameter 85
and /partial parameter 85
and /quiet parameter 85
and /recover parameter 85
and /temlogrestorepath parameter 86
and /tsmnode parameter 86
and /tsmoptfile parameter 86
and /tsmpassword parameter 86
example 87, 88
overview 78
syntax diagram 80
restore options
GUI
auto select 47
disable VSS instant restore 54
mountdatabases 54
run recovery 53
Show all objects 47
Show only Active objects 46
restorefiles command
and /buffers parameter 92
and /buffersize parameter 92
and /configfile parameter 92
and /excapplication parameter 92
and /into parameter 92
and /logfile parameter 93
and /logprune parameter 93
and /mountwait parameter 93
and /object parameter 94
and /partial parameter 94
and /quiet parameter 94
and /tsmnode parameter 94
and /tsmoptfile parameter 94
restorefiles command (continued)
and /tsmpassword parameter 94
example 95, 96
overview 90
syntax diagram 90
S
SAN Volume Controller 7
considerations 7
security 15
set command
and /backupdestination
parameter 100
and /backupmethod parameter 100
and /buffers parameter 101
and /buffersize parameter 101
and /configfile parameter 103
and /dateformat parameter 101
and /language parameter 101
and /localsmagentnode parameter 101
and /logfile parameter 101
and /logprune parameter 102
and /mountwait parameter 102
and /numberformat parameter 102
and /remotedsmentgnode parameter 102
and /temlogrestorepath parameter 102
and /timeformat parameter 103
example 103
overview 100
syntax diagram 100
setup.exe
used for silent installation 125
silent installation of Data Protection for Exchange 123
software provider 7
software requirements 20
Software Support
contacting 135
describing problems 136
determining business impact 135
receiving weekly updates 133
submitting problems 136
SRS
backup
command line 72
legacy backup
GUI 50
restore 53
command line 83
restorefiles
command line 92
storage group
backup
command line 71
legacy backup
GUI 50
restore 52
command line 81
restorefiles
command line 91
VSS backup
GUI 50
storage group (continued)
VSS off-loaded backup
GUI 51
storage pool 29
syntax diagrams
backup command 70
changetsmpassword command 97
help command 104
query exchange command 57
query tdp command 61
query tsm command 64
restore command 80
restorefiles command 90
set command 100
system provider 7
T
tdpecx.cfg file
and backup command 72
and changetsmpassword
command 97
and GUI 44
and GUI invocation 48
and query tdp command 61
and query tsm command 65
and restore command 82, 86
and restorefiles command 92
and set command 103
parameters
setting 36
query exchange 57
tdpecx.log file
and backup command 73
and changetsmpassword
command 98
and GUI 45
and query exchange command 58
and query tdp command 61
and query tsm command 65
and restore command 83
and restorefiles command 93
and set command 101
tdpecx.exe
overview 56
temlogrestorepath parameter
and GUI 44
and restore command 86
and set command 102
timeformat parameter
and GUI 46
and set command 103
Tivoli software information center x
Tivoli Storage Manager
policy settings 13
Tivoli Storage Manager options file 66,
74, 86, 94, 99
Tivoli Storage Manager scheduler
automate backups 115
example 115
Tivoli technical training xi
toolbar
description 48
training, Tivoli technical xi
transaction log
backup 3
restore 8, 78
tree view
description 43
tsmnode parameter
and backup command 74
and changetsmpassword command 99
and query tsm command 66
and restore command 86
and restorefiles command 94
tsmoptfile parameter
and backup command 74
and changetsmpassword command 99
and GUI invocation 48
and query tsm command 66
and restore command 86
and restorefiles command 94
tsmpassword parameter
and backup command 75
and query tsm command 66
and restore command 86
and restorefiles command 94
typeface conventions xii

U
utilities
dsmcutil 32
utilities menu
description 47

V
Version 1
backup strategy 21, 112
view menu
description 46
VSS
and Legacy backups 12
DS and SAN Volume Controller storage 27
hardware provider 7
N-series and NetApp storage 27
node names 30
Off-loaded backup 8
proxy nodes 30
software provider 7
software requirements 20
system provider 7
tdpexc.cfg
configuration parameters 36
VSS Backup
considerations 7
method 6
overview 3
VSS Fast Restore
method 10
VSS Instant Restore
hardware requirements 19
method 10
software requirements 20
VSS operations
output example 60
VSS Provider 4
VSS Requestor 4